

***Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!***



***Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!***

***A Reigning Manual for the Glorious Church  
...In Preparation of the Bride of Christ***

**Santos Garcia, Jr. © 2008**

**Artwork and Cover Design by Anthony Michael Garcia  
([www.spixel.com](http://www.spixel.com); [www.craftsmanshipinstruments.com](http://www.craftsmanshipinstruments.com))**

© Copyright 2008- Santos Garcia, Jr.

All rights reserved. This book is protected by the copyright laws of the United States of America. The text may not be copied or reprinted for commercial gain or profit. The use of short quotations for personal or group study is permitted and in fact encouraged. All other permissions may be granted based on written request ([zionsgate.wordpress.com](http://zionsgate.wordpress.com)).

All Scripture references are from  
**the *Recovery Version Holy Bible***  
(Anaheim, CA: **Living Stream Ministry**, 2003)  
unless otherwise noted.

All direct quotations (Chapter 17) are with  
written permission from the multiple ministries listed.

Please note that the name of our adversary satan  
is not capitalized. I have chosen not to acknowledge him,  
even to the point of violating grammatical rules.

**Artwork and Cover Design by Anthony Michael Garcia**  
([www.spixel.com](http://www.spixel.com); [www.craftsmanshipinstruments.com](http://www.craftsmanshipinstruments.com))

This is an imprint of  
**Royal Priesthood Publications™**

**ISBN 978-1450518482**

**For Worldwide Distribution-  
Printed in the United States of America.**

## Table of Contents

<b>Introduction</b> .....	9
 <b>Part I: Holy, Royal, Warrior-Priesthood</b>	
Chapter 1- A Chosen Generation: What and Who are We? .....	15
Chapter 2- A Royal Priesthood: Our Profound Responsibility.....	27
Chapter 3- A Holy Nation: Consecrated and Set Apart.....	37
Chapter 4- A Warrior-Priesthood: More than Conquerors.....	43
 <b>Part II: The Elementary Principles of Christ</b>	
Chapter 5- A Sure Foundation: The Reliability of the Holy Bible.....	53
Chapter 6- The Foundational Principle- <i>Repentance from Dead Works</i> .....	59
Chapter 7- The Foundational Principle- <i>Faith toward God</i> .....	65
Chapter 8- The Foundational Principle- <i>the Doctrine of Baptisms</i> .....	71
Chapter 9- The Foundational Principle- <i>Laying on of Hands</i> .....	85
Chapter 10- The Foundational Principle- <i>Resurrection of the Dead</i> .....	93
Chapter 11- The Foundational Principle- <i>Eternal Judgment</i> .....	103
Chapter 12- The Foundational Principle- <i>Ultimate Perfection</i> .....	109
Chapter 13- When Zion Travails... She Brings Forth Children.....	119
 <b>Part III: Advancing Christ's Kingdom</b>	
Chapter 14- Christ's Kingdom According to the Scriptures.....	131
Chapter 15- Mysteries of the Kingdom.....	149
Chapter 16- Called, Commissioned, and Empowered.....	159
Chapter 17- ... For Such a Time as This... ..	169
Web Resources Directory.....	213
Recommended Reading List.....	217



## DEDICATION

This book is dedicated with deep love and great awe  
to our loving Heavenly  
**Jehovah Abba Father**  
Who has revealed Himself to us  
In spite of our brokenness...

And has set in motion our full transformation  
By the Power of  
**His Holy Spirit...**  
Because of the Glorious Victory of the Cross  
Of our God and Savior, and profound Lover of our souls-  
**The Lord Jesus Christ**

"I thank you **Holy Father**  
And will for all eternity give you the love, honor, and praise  
That is rightfully and continually due to Your Holy Name.

Your son, bondservant, and one ambassador  
of the Eternal Kingdom..."

**Santos Garcia, Jr.**





## Introduction

Planet earth is still alive but not doing so well. Global climate change is a controversial issue with many proponents as well as naysayers who are just as passionate in their convictions. I have an opinion- though not being a scientist, I don't have the necessary credentials to speak to this... but I will submit a telling proposition. I believe that what we are experiencing on a worldwide scale is prophesied in the Bible books of Hosea and Romans (**NKJV** quoted):

**Hosea 8:7...** *They sow to the wind, and reap the whirlwind.*

**Romans 8:20-22...** *For the creation was subjected to futility, not willingly, but because of Him who subjected it in hope; because the creation itself also will be delivered from the bondage of corruption into the glorious liberty of the children of God. For we know that the whole creation groans and labors with birth pangs together until now.*

The earth is reeling under the weight of rampant sin. The spirit of violence is seen at work: in doctor assisted and government sanctioned abortion exceeding 50 million innocent ones in America alone, since the Supreme Court **Roe vs. Wade** decision (Jan.'73). Gangs brutalize our neighborhoods, intimidating and killing the innocent, and killing each other for control of city-block territory and their organized crime. Civil war and wars of other kinds spill blood on much foreign soil. Radical terrorism looms ever larger as the unrelenting adversary of western civilization. Gratuitous sex of all kinds is pumped out of sewers into our living rooms via all forms of media. Young "girls gone wild" do things under the influence without shame or known remorse. The lust for money and the power of greed permeate our societies like a cancer. The abomination that is homosexuality has made inroads from Hollywood Babylon to our elementary school literature.

Where is the light in all of this darkness? **The Shekinah Presence of God** is the only eternal light that can dispel the darkness. The true church of the Living God, the universal Body of Christ, are those who not only carry this light within and are called to shine it without—but also we

as blood-bought children of God carry the Kingdom as ambassadors of the Lord Jesus Christ, for we are emissaries of His Kingdom. We stand at a watershed period in human history, the critical importance of which is not escaping the hearts, minds, and prayers of the watchers and intercessors in the greater Body of Christ. Worldwide there has been unparalleled agreement in prayer for a heart of repentance to come upon our contemporary society. In particular the burden is for America to return to her Christian foundations, and herald the Gospel of the Kingdom throughout the land in these Last Days.

I believe that right now the Body of Christ in its many representative streams is resonating with an intense desire for more of God and the Power of His Holy Spirit in tackling the issues of life. We as the people of God have received a dominion mandate. It's time we learn how to walk in it. That is the primary reason this book in three parts brings clarity concerning the foundational principles of the faith, as well as how to walk in Kingdom authority. There is the sound of an Awakening thundering on the horizon.

The Universal Body of Christ is beginning to rise up, in our time, and take possession of what our Lord has commanded. Jesus said, "**Occupy until I come.**" **Luke 19:13 (KJV)**. In the context of the parable of the talents, it specifically deals with faithful stewardship on a personal basis; in the greater context of the corporate Body of Christ it speaks of our dominion mandate restored to the children of God since the Cross of Calvary. We are finally discerning that this is a military directive from our Commander in Chief, the King of Glory- the Captain of the Hosts of Heaven.

The Body of Christ is called to facilitate **the Final Harvest at the End of the Age**. We as royal emissaries of the Kingdom of Heaven are in the earth for this specific time in God's economy. The world in its diverse cultures is over-run by the children of satan. We are called to possess the land of promise... and because we carry the Kingdom within (the indwelling divine life), we have the sober responsibility of carrying out the Holy Trinity's divine intention of destroying the works of the devil and rescuing a lost humanity from hell on earth now, and eternal separation from God in the lake of fire in the future.

We who are truly sons and daughters of the Kingdom are to exercise the authority and power of His Presence that we have received through the indwelling Holy Spirit. The mandate that is ours is to appropriate everything for which the Lord died: the full rewards of the Lamb's sufferings.

*Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!*

**Luke 12:32... Do not be afraid- little flock, because your Father has been well pleased to give you the Kingdom.**

Not only are we to expand the Kingdom by winning souls and facilitating their transformation into mature and dedicated disciples-- but we are also to invade, conquer, and possess ground in every area of contemporary society. This is not a "Fortress" mentality-- hunkered down and waiting to be raptured... but rather **His Special Forces** operating in all seven mountains of our cross-culturally diverse society: 1) the local Church, 2) the traditional Family, 3) Education, 4) Government and Law, 5) Technology and Media, 6) the Creative Realm: all the Arts, Sports and Recreation, and 7) Business and Finance. The days are getting darker, and although we know from the prophetic Scriptures that the enemy will continue to kill, steal, and destroy, because this world system sits in the lap of satan- we are to arise and shine and rescue as many as are ordained for salvation before the Lord's return... (see **Isaiah 60:1-5; 61:1-4**).

I believe there is a great need for many more apostolic and prophetic teaching books and other media related to the Kingdom of our Lord Jesus Christ. My Weblog at [zionsgate.wordpress.com](http://zionsgate.wordpress.com) has been specifically created to advance Christ's Kingdom. This Kingdom reference book begins with the premise of understanding foundational principles, then moves into instruction about the Kingdom in light of our Lord Jesus' clear teachings in the Gospel of Matthew. Its third section delves into the prophetic decrees that have gone forth concerning the Kingdom manifesting in greater measure until the influence of the Lord is felt over the entire earth and all its people... for good or for judgment.

**2 Corinthians 2:14-17 (NKJV)... Now thanks be to God who always leads us in triumph in Christ, and through us diffuses the fragrance of His knowledge in every place. For we are to God the fragrance of Christ among those who are being saved and among those who are perishing. To one we are the aroma of death to death, and to the other the aroma of life to life. And who is sufficient for these things? For we are not, as so many, peddling the word of God; but as of sincerity, but as from God, we speak in the sight of God in Christ.**

This **End of Days** training manual is directed to all the children of God who are tired of being spectators. Each of us who is fed up with observing our society and world overrun by the children of satan can take heart in knowing how it all finally ends: **He has won already-- and therefore we inevitably win!** The fact is that our God will not restore the world without our active involvement... He has chosen not to do it without us. In His Infinite Wisdom He has ordained that we are to escape Egypt, learn to war in the wilderness, cross over Jordan (**...NOW!**), and possess our Promised Land (twelve stones out... twelve stones in-see **Joshua 4**). Just

*Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!*

as Jesus in His active ministry went strategically from place to place destroying the works of the devil, and exactly as demonstrated in the Book of Acts-- the Spirit-filled and led people of God turned the world upside down... (which is-in eternal reality- right side up); so are we called to do the same and more.

**It bears repeating: We are to facilitate and nurture the greatest Harvest of Souls in the history of mankind-to the Glory of God the Father, by the Power of His Holy Spirit, in the Precious Name of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ!**

With one voice and in one accord we must all declare...

***"Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!"***

Santos Garcia, Jr.  
Beaumont, California

*Part I:*

*Holy, Royal, Warrior-Priesthood*



## **Chapter 1- A Chosen Generation: What and Who are We?**

There is a truth, a reality that the knowledge of- will begin a process of internalization and transformation that each of us as sons and daughters of God must experience. Many of us in coming to Christ were seriously damaged goods (my own life a prime example). Hopefully pride will not cause us to forget or make light of our brokenness, sinfulness, and rebellion. But **if** we have truly been born again, and we are obeying His Word and Spirit, then **this reality can, will, and in fact must manifest!**

**Romans 12:1,2...** *I exhort you therefore, brothers, through the compassion of God to present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, well pleasing to God, which is your reasonable service. And do not be fashioned according to this age, but be transformed by the renewing of the mind, that you may prove what the will of God is: that which is good and well pleasing and perfect.*

The metamorphosis of our minds: our thoughts, our will, emotions, imagination, motives, and desires-- will allow us to grow in the understanding and living out of the will of God. This special truth, the reality that I am alluding to is that **we must begin to see ourselves as the Lord Himself sees us**. The Holy Bible is the Almighty Trinity's comprehensive love letter to mankind, and specifically to all of us who respond to and receive His precious gift of eternal life (His divine life within). This life begins when we are born again through the finished work of Christ on the cross.

**John 3:16...** *For God so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son, that everyone who believes in Him would not perish, but would have eternal life.*

How does God the Father see His born again children? It is beautifully stated by Peter under the anointing of the Holy Spirit:

**1 Peter 2:9...** *But you are a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people acquired for a possession, so that you may tell out*

***the virtues of Him who has called you out of darkness into His marvelous light.***

As a new creation, a new race of being with His divine presence within, we are privileged to declare the virtues of our Holy God. As in all Scripture there are almost unfathomable depths of meaning and profound truths to be gleamed from this portion of holy text; to be meditated upon, understood, and accepted. This verse speaks volumes and we will look carefully at some of the truths revealed that we may possess the Kingdom according to our Father's revealed will.

### **A Chosen Race: The Elect of God**

***1 Peter 1:2... Chosen according to the foreknowledge of God the Father in the sanctification of the Spirit unto the obedience and sprinkling of the Blood of Jesus Christ...***

***Romans 8:28-30... And we know that all things work together for good to those who love God, to those who are called according to His purpose. Because those whom He foreknew, He also predestinated to be conformed to the image of His Son, that He might be the Firstborn among many brothers; and those whom He predestinated, these He also called; and those whom He called, these He also justified; and those whom He justified, these He also glorified.***

In eternity past, before God created anything in this particular universe-- including the angelic host, He knew us all by name. His sons' and daughters' names have been written in the ***Lamb's Book of Life*** from the foundation of the world (**Rev. 21:27+**). Because God knows the end from the beginning, He always knew who would respond to the call and would therefore constitute His chosen ones. Each of us needed to arrive on the scene of world history, to be born into the mainstream of humanity, hear the declaration of the gospel, and eventually respond to His saving grace.

The word "generation" implies a new race-- distinctly different, because of the indwelling divine life of the Lord in us. The sad fact is that ***"Many are called, but few are chosen"*** (**Matt. 20:16**). Unfortunately there are myriads exiting this life daily that have no relationship with the Father through the finished work of Christ on the cross, and as a consequence are eternally doomed. When the contemporary prophet Bob Jones had a massive aneurysm burst in his head, he died and went to Heaven until the Lord sent him back, because he was not finished, and had died 'illegally'... He had been assaulted by satan without authority. At the time



Chapter 1- A Chosen Generation

of his crossing over-- he was aware that at that exact instant, 97 other people had died without Christ and were therefore damned. **Hell has truly enlarged itself (Isaiah 5:14).**

The most important aspect of our Dominion mandate is to win souls for Christ and His Kingdom; not just converts-- but rather **disciples**... those who are sold out **100%** for the Lord. In our sharing the Gospel we "awaken" the spiritually dead to their likewise being called and potentially chosen, and we thereby actively participate in the expansion of the Kingdom (see [www.keytorevival.org](http://www.keytorevival.org)). We, **the chosen**- must live our lives in such a way as to be contagious. Our families, friends, neighbors, acquaintances, and even strangers must **catch** our healing condition. We have the antidote to the poison of spiritual death!

**The chosen** are easily recognizable. We are salt and light. Salt was highly valued in ancient history and biblical times not only for adding flavor to food, but also as a preservative. Light scatters the darkness, bringing clarity to that which is veiled or hidden. Expanding on this metaphor the Lord Jesus said:

**Matt. 5:13-17... You are the salt of the earth, but if the salt has become tasteless, with what shall it be salted? It is no longer good for anything, except to be cast out and trampled underfoot by men. You are the light of the world. It is impossible for a city situated upon a mountain to be hidden. Nor do men light a lamp and place it under a bushel, but on the lampstand; and it shines to all who are in the house. In the same way, let your light shine before men, so that they may see your good works and glorify your Father who is in Heaven.**

What does this imply in our lives? By being **the chosen** who are grounded in the truth-- (**the Way, the Truth, and the Life**), we add flavor to an otherwise tasteless or bitter life. We act also as a preservative to the corruption of the world, the flesh, and the devil. Also as salt causes thirst, our lives can cause mankind to thirst and hunger after righteousness... to be made right with God, jealous for Him.

**2 Cor. 4:5-7... For we do not preach ourselves but Christ Jesus as Lord, and ourselves as your slaves for Jesus' sake. Because the God who said, "Out of darkness light shine", is the One who shines in our hearts to illuminate the knowledge of the Glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ. But we have this treasure in earthen vessels that the excellency of the power may be of God and not of us.**

We will revisit this portion of scripture several times from different perspectives in our course of study of the Kingdom.

We truly carry the most profound treasure in the vessels of our earthly bodies-- the abiding presence of God, the Divine Life! **This is the Good News!** The gospel is the gospel of the Glory of Christ, which illuminates, radiates, and shines in the heart of man. If a man's heart is not veiled or blinded by satan-- man can see the illuminating power of the gospel. When God said let there be light, His shining in the universe produced the old creation. Now God's shining in our hearts makes us a new creation, and produces the new covenant ministers and our ministry.

Please don't miss the contrast here between the old covenant of the Law given to Moses, and the better covenant which we have received administered through Christ's atoning work. In **Exodus 34:29** we find that Moses' face shone when he came down from the mountain with the tablets of the Law. This was because he had been in the presence of God, who was shining upon him from without. **In Christ, we shine from within**, as we release unhindered the manifest presence of His indwelling Spirit who is One with our spirit.

**1 Corinthians 6:17... *But he who is joined to the Lord is one spirit.***

This clearly indicates the mingling and "fusing" together of the Holy Spirit of Christ with our spirit. In the regeneration of our spirit from death to life, the power of the resurrection is activated in each of us by the life-giving Spirit who is now in residence within us.

**Romans 8:14-17... *For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, these are the sons of God. For you have not received a spirit of slavery bringing you into fear again, but you have received a spirit of sonship in which we cry-- Abba, Father! The Spirit Himself witnesses with our spirit that we are children of God. And if children, heirs also; on the one hand, heirs of God; on the other, joint heirs with Christ, if indeed we suffer with Him that we may also be glorified with Him.***

Our regenerated human spirit mingled with the Spirit of God reveals to us a glimpse of the extent of our eternal blessings. Sonship in this spirit includes the life, the position, and the living enjoyment of our birthright, the inheritance, leading to the full manifestation of a son of God. We can call our Father **Abba** because we are now His children, not just His creation. By this intimate exclamation and profound term of endearment we "witness" that we truly are His children, which the Spirit confirms as He bears witness. This also begins a necessary process of growth as it appropriately restricts us to living and walking according to this life, a life in keeping with our being children of God.

The last verse **17** above presents a sobering truth: There is a condition for us to become heirs. We are not heirs simply because we are children

*Chapter 1- A Chosen Generation*

of God. After being born as children, we need to grow to become sons and daughters-- which requires suffering, that we may be qualified and glorified as legal heirs. The Lord Jesus says:

**John 10:10...** *The thief does not come except to steal and kill and destroy; **I have come that they may have life and may have it abundantly.***

The enemy comes to kill us spiritually, emotionally, and ultimately physically. How? He comes to steal our vision, purpose, and destiny. He desires that we be conformed to his image rather than the image of God that was and still is our original design. He comes to destroy as many around us as he can-- through our fallen nature, rebellion, or ignorance in passivity. But **No! No! No!** The wicked one will not advance any further! You and I as God's **chosen ones** must act like it! The light of His Presence will dispel any and all darkness. Cause your light to shine to fulfill what the Lord intends-- **"...that they may have life..."** *dynamic, invincible spiritual life* transforming everything you touch. This is life more abundant-- the Spirit without measure, a continuing flow of the Divine Life getting ever deeper, ever wider, and with increasing power!

**Psalm 42:7,8...** *Deep calls unto deep at the sound of Your water spouts; all Your waves and Your billows pass over me. **By day Jehovah commands His lovingkindness, and by night His song is with me, a prayer to the God of my life.***

Not only does the Holy Spirit bear witness that we are God's children, He also continually communes and communicates with us the deep things of God. We each have a unique relationship with the Trinity, and it is God's desire that we have ears to hear and eyes to see all that he plans to reveal to us. The destiny and purpose that we can fulfill require active faith, daily leaning into the vision that the Lord would impart to us, as long as we are receptive and walking in humility and Holy Fear of the Lord.

**Jeremiah 29:11...** *For I know the thoughts and plans that I have for you, says the Lord, thoughts and plans for welfare and peace, and not for evil, to give you hope in your final outcome. Amplified Version*

We are a new creation, back to God's original intent-- a dwelling place for God in the spirit that we may proclaim His glory, mercy, and love... and yet there is more...

**"The Chosen"-- For What Purpose?**

Dr. Paul Billheimer wrote a life-changing book, ***Destined for the Throne***. He develops the thesis that the divine intention of our Triune God in the creation was and is to prepare a Bride for the Son. Space does not permit me to do it justice, but it presents a compelling picture of the Love of God, a love story of universal proportions. Think of this: **Genesis 1:1** speaks of a creation that by God's very nature of being perfect, was initially made perfect. Then in verse 2 it becomes as one translation states "**without form and void**". I prefer how it's stated in the **Living Stream Ministry Recovery Version**:

**Genesis 1:1, 2... *In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth. But the earth became waste and emptiness, and darkness was on the surface of the deep.***

'In the beginning' refers to the beginning of **time** which began at the creation of the universe and will continue until the **Great White Throne** judgment at the end of the millennial reign of Christ. Time exists for the accomplishing of God's purpose which he conceived in eternity past. **God** in this verse is the Hebrew word **Elohim** which means ***Mighty One***, and is plural-- although the action verb **created** is singular... revealing the Trinity in the first verse of Holy Scripture. The order of creation "heavens and earth" implies strongly that the heavens and the angelic hosts were created first (**see Job 38:4-7**), followed by the earth with some forms of living creatures. Our God created the good earth, and something profoundly cataclysmic must have happened to render it "**waste and emptiness**" (see **Isaiah 45:18- where it clearly states that God did not create the earth- a desolate waste**). Many scholars believe that God's judgment fell on a preadamic universe because of the rebellion of Lucifer and the angels that fell with him and perhaps creatures on earth who joined that rebellion.

**Waste and emptiness** are words used for judgment in Scripture. The darkness on the surface of the deep symbolizes death that covered the whole earth. Therefore this line of reasoning considers that verse **1** of **Genesis 1** deals with God's original creation while beginning with verse **2** it is referring to God's restoration of a damaged universe.

For a long time I have wondered why Lucifer fell. How could he who had such a privileged position in the angelic hierarchy, rebel against the Creator and seek to usurp His throne and power? We find two references in scripture that describe him in detail:

**Isaiah 14:12-17... *How you have fallen from Heaven, O Daystar [Lucifer], son of the dawn! How you have been hewn down to earth, you who made nations fall prostrate! But you, you said in your heart: I will ascend to Heaven; above the stars of God I will exalt my throne. And I will***

## Chapter 1- A Chosen Generation

*sit upon the mount of assembly in the uttermost part of the north. I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will make myself like the Most High. But you will be brought down to Sheol, to the uttermost parts of the pit. Those who see you will gaze at you; they will ponder concerning you, asking, "Is this the man who made the earth tremble, the one who shook kingdoms; who made the world like a wilderness and tore down its cities; who did not release his captives to their homes?"*

**Ezekiel 28:12-19...** *Thus says the Lord Jehovah, "O you who sealed up perfection, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty, **you were in Eden**, the garden of God. Every precious stone was your covering... The workmanship of your tambourines and pipes was prepared with you on the day that you were created. You were the anointed cherub who covered the Ark; indeed I set you, so that you were upon the Holy Mountain of God, you walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire. You were perfect in your ways from the day that you were created, until unrighteousness was found in you. By the abundance of your trading they filled your midst with violence, and you sinned.*

*So I cast you out as profane from the Mountain of God, and I destroyed you, O covering cherub, from the midst of stones of fire. Your heart was lifted up because of your beauty; you corrupted your wisdom by reason of your brightness. I cast you to the ground; I presented you before kings that they might look at you. By the multitude of your iniquities in the unrighteousness of your trading you have profaned your sanctuaries. Therefore I sent forth fire from your midst; it consumed you, and I reduced you to ashes upon the earth in the sight of all those who look at you. All who know you among the people are astonished at you. You have become a source of terror, and you will be no more forever."*

satan's rebellion polluted not only the earth, but also the heavens, and caused both to be judged by God. That is why in Genesis 1:2 the sun and stars did not shine, and the earth was covered with darkness and deep water. **Rev. 12:4a; 9b** reveal that one-third of the angels of Heaven joined satan in his rebellion and were judged becoming fallen angels. These are the evil forces of the devil which are against God's purposes in creation.

**Ephesians 6:12...** *For our wrestling is not against blood and flesh but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the world-rulers of this darkness, against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenlies.*

The living creatures [human-like?] on the earth in the preadamic age also joined satan in his rebellion (according to this thesis). They became disembodied spirits, the demons who live in the water where they were judged. They work for satan's kingdom of darkness with the driven desire

to possess human vessels to carry out their evil assignments. Again not only does the rebellion of Lucifer seem the height of madness, but how was he capable of persuading one-third of God's holy angels to rebel with him? I have prayed about this dilemma off and on for many years... how was this possible? In a period of fasting and prayer I came upon a possibility, though I must add the disclaimer that this is just a theory without scriptural confirmation, and is therefore purely conjecture.

The angelic hosts of heaven are referred to as sons of God (**Job 1:6**). They have enjoyed a great existence-- one full of wisdom, beauty, power, and apparent productive purpose. But they were all created and have no inherent power of procreation (**see Matt. 22:30**). Ponder this with me: every single angel was like the rest of God's creation... instantaneously created. Everything burst on the scene (the universe) so to speak **full grown** as if it had already been here. Which came first? The chicken or the egg? Since we believe the Scriptures holding to the inerrancy of God's Word, it's apparent that the chicken (two of a kind: male and female) came first-- full-grown, fully formed, at the peak age of maturity, and in God's wisdom was given the ability to procreate... to make eggs. Therefore all future chickens came from the original prototypes. How can we know this? Because Adam was created a full grown man and then he was filled with the breath of God and became a living soul. **The Universe was created with age (as Adam was) as if it had been here all along!**

What if the Trinity presented to the angelic hosts the decision to create a distinct race of being (**mankind**) in which God would dwell in physical form, who would be an extension of His Divine Life and would carry out His myriad purposes in the Universe? This would immediately put another form of life between the Godhead and the angelic hosts who are all created, and yet they will never carry His presence although empowered by it. With Lucifer's proximity to God as the most powerful archangel who carried the responsibility of "**covering**" God's glory, and leading in the worship of God-- he could be the most profoundly offended... especially if he already had designs on elevating himself even further.

Lucifer may have challenged God as being unfair to them as those rightfully closest to God, and also may have challenged the wisdom of His creation-- ridiculing the idea that humans would love, honor, and obey God without being forced. This set up a legal suit to be adjudicated over time with the victory won in Christ's atoning death. This will only be answered on the other side, although it poses a provocative scenario.

**Genesis 1:26-28... And God said, Let Us make man in Our image, according to Our likeness, and let them have **dominion** over the fish of the sea and over the birds of heaven and over the cattle and over all the**

Chapter 1- A Chosen Generation

*earth and over every creeping thing that creeps upon the earth. **And God created man in His image; in the image of God He created him; male and female He created them.** And God blessed them; and God said to them, be fruitful and multiply, and fill the earth, and subdue it, and have **dominion**...*

Man was created on the sixth day, filled with the breath of God, and given a **dominion mandate**. God created a physical being (man-- both male and female) to express His image and represent Him by the delegated authority of **dominion** over all of God's creation on earth. This would also include overcoming satan, God's enemy, recovering the earth, and exercising God's authority in order that the Kingdom of God would come on earth manifesting God's glory. Due to the fall of the first Adam, the recovery was not possible until Jesus Christ as the second Adam would initiate the inexorable process of full recovery and restoration through His victory on the cross.

One strong point that needs emphasis deals with the manner that satan deceived Adam and Eve and its results. Looking carefully at the account of their complementary relationship in God's design, we read:

**Genesis 2:22, 23...** *And Jehovah built the rib, which He had taken from the man into a woman and brought her to the man. And the man said, "This time this is bone of my bones and flesh of my flesh; this one shall be called Woman because out of Man this one was taken.*

Eve was not created; she was **built** from Adam's rib. This is a type of the building of the church with the resurrection life released from Christ through His death on the cross, and His impartation into His believers in His resurrection. Before Eve was **built** God had clearly told Adam (**Gen. 2:16, 17**) that they could partake of every edible thing in the Garden of Eden except for the fruit of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil... **for in the day that you eat of it you shall surely die.** In the book ***Enmity between the Seeds*** by Bill Cloud (see [www.billcloud.org](http://www.billcloud.org)) the author presents a fascinating theory. Since in God's creation of earth in the six days of creation, He looks at His handiwork and said that it was all good-- the tree of the knowledge of good and evil may have been planted by the enemy as part of the legal controversy. There is evidence of corrupt seed being planted in the field of the world (**Matt. 13:24-30**) which we will look into in greater depth in another chapter. This provocative book lays a compelling case for the explanation of the crisis in society and the world reflecting the historic battle in each generation between the children of satan and the sons and daughters of God.

She and Adam were deceived by satan in acting independently from God and His directives. The enemy appealed to her as the weaker vessel and

caused doubt of God's word and His trustworthiness (**Genesis 3:1-7**). Satan's questioning stirred up Eve's doubting mind which prevented her from using her spirit to contact God. The evil thought entered into Eve and contaminated her mind even before she ate of the tree of knowledge. Without the covering of her husband Adam, she became ensnared by the serpent and fully deceived.

Because of this transgression on both the part of Adam and Eve, man fell into God's condemnation and was cursed. He was alienated from the life of God, and satan's evil thoughts and feelings were injected into man's mind contaminating man's soul. Via this sin satan entered into man's body and became sin within man. As a result of the fall-- man's spirit was deadened and insulated from God. Each of man's triune nature-- his body, his soul, and his spirit-- was damaged by the fall.

In this legal court case before the entire universe of creation we are witnesses for the defense... (viewing satan and his forces as the plaintiffs against God, and the Trinity as the defendants before all... proving the validity of God's Love, His wisdom, and His ways). This is why **1 Peter 2:9b** is so powerful-- ... ***that you may set forth the wonderful deeds and display the virtues and perfections of Him who called you out of darkness into His marvelous light (Amplified Version)***. We testify of our changed lives, daily being transformed because of the Lord's working in us through His Spirit. This following portion of Scripture says it all:

***Ephesians 3:9-11... and to make all people see what is the fellowship of the mystery, which from the beginning of the ages has been hidden in God who created all things through Jesus Christ; to the intent that now the manifold wisdom of God might be made known by the church to the principalities and powers in the heavenly places, according to the eternal purpose which He accomplished in Christ Jesus our Lord...***

God's Wisdom made known by whom?... **by the church!** To whom?... **to the principalities and powers-- see Ephesians 6:10-18**. With all due respect and humility, please understand that **The Chosen** are ***destined for the throne, destined to inherit the Kingdom***. We are called, empowered, and transformed, to rule and reign with Christ in the Millennial Kingdom for 1000 years... and then in the Eternal Kingdom beyond time after the 1000 years has transpired. The wicked one and his legions know this. They have known this desire and purpose of God since before the fall of the first Adam. **The last Adam (Christ Jesus) has made our transformation and full inheritance possible and assured**. The truth is that all creation is to glorify God-- to reveal His profound Divine attributes and Perfection. **Man has the singular**



*Chapter 1- A Chosen Generation*

**enviable position of being vessels of His Presence. We carry the Kingdom, because we are in Him and He is in us... Hallelujah!!**

Always remember this... call it to mind, and declare it: **"I am chosen and filled with the presence of God."**



## **Chapter 2- A Royal Priesthood: Our Profound Responsibility**

**1 Peter 2:9 (Amplified Version)**... *But you are a chosen race, a **Royal Priesthood**, a dedicated nation, [God's] own purchased, special people, that you may set forth the wonderful deeds and display the virtues and perfections of Him Who called you out of darkness into His marvelous light.*

God's Word is so AWESOME! Every time I have traveled through the Holy Scriptures from Genesis 1:1 to Revelation 22:21 (in 9 English and 3 Spanish versions), I am fed divine food, and drink of the Holy Spirit beyond thirst!

In every book the Lord Jesus Christ is revealed, the Father's Love is showcased, and the Holy Spirit's Power is proclaimed and demonstrated. Time after time the Trinity is manifested, whether overtly or in types, symbols, and parables. For example: He is declared to be: "The God of **Abraham**, the God of **Isaac**, and the God of **Jacob (Israel)**. **Abraham** means "**Father of a multitude**" and is a type of our Heavenly Father--through whom all nations of mankind have been and will be blessed. The Father's Heart of love is a perfect love, full of compassion, tender mercies, and longing for our very best to be realized.

**Isaac** means "**laughter**" and he is the promised son who inherits all--just as Jesus will, according to the Divine will of the Father. He is also the faithful, obedient son for whom a bride is sought. Abraham's servant **Eliezer** (which means "**God of help**" and is a type of the Holy Spirit) is sent to seek for a helpmate on Isaac's behalf. This again shows how the Holy Spirit is busy in the world preparing a Bride for the Bridegroom, our Lord Jesus Christ. **Jacob** means "**heel catcher**" and in conflict with his brother Esau in the womb, is avoiding getting his head crushed by his sibling. Bill Cloud of [Shoreshim Ministries](#) presents a compelling argument studying the Hebrew more accurately, and shows that the conflict between the seed of God represented by Jacob, and the seed of satan represented by Esau is what is actually played out in the womb of Rebekah. Jacob was not the supplanter or thief necessarily, but rather was preventing the adversary from taking him out prematurely.

His name was changed to **Israel** which means *"a prince who has power with God- in union and agreement with God's purposes"*. This has dual meanings: In a type it represents the Holy Spirit, and yet also reveals the transformation that the Holy Spirit works out in the life of the believer.

Yet another prophetic layer is developed beautifully by Watchman Nee in his book ***Changed Into His Likeness***. These three persons-- **Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob (Israel)** reveal the divine progression in the true believer's life:

1) Like Abraham, each of us is called out of the world. He left Ur of the Chaldeans in Babylon, to go where God directed him-- to a Promised Land, to inherit from God every inch of terrain where his foot stepped... once there.

2) Like Isaac, we become sons and daughters who inherit everything (the Kingdom). This is not based on working for it, or based upon our own merit-- but just by receiving the full blessings of the abundance of the Father. These manifold blessings are in all areas spiritual, emotional, and physical. For us as it says in the New Testament:

**Luke 12:32...** *Do not be afraid, little flock, because your Father has been well pleased to give you the Kingdom.*

3) Jacob becomes Israel-- this is our transformation **unto full stature** (see **Ephesians 4:11-32**) in becoming a prince or royalty of God. Salvation is a free gift- all that is required to receive it is for one to agree with God and own up to our spiritually bankrupt condition. We are fallen, dead in trespasses and sins. We then acknowledge that without divine intervention through Christ's atoning death on the cross-- there would be no hope... no salvation... no deliverance or healing. He is the Way, the Truth, and the Life (**John 14:6**).

Then repentance can begin to position us to receive the gift of salvation in confessing Jesus as Savior and Lord of our lives. This not only removes the stain of the past-- all of our sin up to the moment, but also immediately empowers us by the coming in of the Holy Spirit-- **potentially** to be fully able to resist and overcome the temptation to all future sin.

Receiving the Sovereign Lord Jesus Christ as our Savior, Redeemer, Healer, and Deliverer-- as wonderful and miraculous as that is, is only the beginning. Now each of us individually begins the long and often arduous process of being conformed to His image. **We are to grow in all things**

**and in all ways unto full stature in Christ.** We are infused with His Holy Spirit at the new birth, but need to allow the merging of our quickened spirit with His Eternal Spirit, and to begin to germinate His fruit.

According to **Galatians 5:22** we begin to manifest the fruit of His Spirit which is love, joy, peace, patience, gentleness, goodness, faithfulness, humility, and self-control. We need to give free reign to the Lord in this process, for even as new born babes in Christ we can show forth fruit. As in the natural, fruit grows slowly-- and is solely based upon our surrender, availability for transformation, and the desire to please our Heavenly Father in thought, word, and action. If we are careful to continually be aware of God's Presence, and do moment by moment what He would want us to say or do, our growth rate would accelerate.

Once we are truly born again though, the gifts of the Spirit can immediately manifest-- as He wills. As stated, fruit grows slowly-- it takes time to sprout and mature. It also requires careful, thoughtful nurturing and maturing over time-- fed by the Word and prayer. On the other hand the gifts can immediately and fully activate, and we can see the tangible evidence of its manifestation... again as He (the Holy Spirit) wills.

**1 Corinthians 12:1; 4-11 (NKJV)...** *Now concerning **spiritual gifts**, brethren, I do not want you to be ignorant... Now there are **diversities of gifts, but the same Spirit**. There are **differences of ministries, but the same Lord**. And there are diversities of activities, but **it is the same God who works all in all**. But **the manifestation of the Spirit is given to each one for the profit of all:***

*for to one is given the **word of wisdom** through the Spirit, to another the **word of knowledge** through the same Spirit, to another **faith** by the same Spirit, to another **gifts of healings** by the same Spirit, to another **the working of miracles**, to another **prophecy**, to another **discerning of spirits**, to another **different kinds of tongues**, to another **the interpretation of tongues**. But **one and the same Spirit works all these things, distributing to each one individually as He wills.***

### **This Is Our Priesthood...**

...The daily sacrifice of praise, the fruit of our lips giving thanks to His Holy Name (**Hebrews 13:15**). This offering from our hearts daily... no matter what our temporal experience is--whether good, bad, or indifferent-- pleases our Heavenly Father. Paul under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit says:

*Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!*

**1 Thessalonians 5:16-24 (NKJV)**... *Rejoice always, **pray without ceasing, in everything give thanks; for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus for you.** Do not quench the Spirit. Do not despise prophecies. Test all things; hold fast what is good. Abstain from every form of evil. Now may the God of peace Himself sanctify you completely; and may your whole spirit, soul, and body be preserved blameless at the coming of our **Lord Jesus Christ. He who calls you is faithful, who also will do it.***

The organic Word of God-- living and active, reveals the mind of Christ significantly in this passage. What **it does not** say is that it's God's will for one to suffer. **What it does say** is that when we experience suffering, or in any manner of life experience-- to give Him thanks for His continual daily blessings in spite of our circumstances. Often that very act of worship sets in motion the needed steps to deliver us from trouble; other times it gives us the comfort of the Holy Spirit in the midst of the fiery furnace.

This passage also emphasizes clearly our triune nature: spirit, soul, and body... and the fact that in each aspect of man we have the enviable capacity to worship the Living God. As willing vessels we praise and worship Him, and His loving response is to sanctify (cleanse) us completely... and continually. In this attitude of worship we fulfill:

**Romans 12: 1, 2 (Ism)**... *I exhort you therefore, brothers, through the compassions of God to present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, well pleasing to God, which is your reasonable service. And do not be fashioned according to this age, but be transformed by the renewing of the mind that you may prove what the will of God is-- that which is good, and well pleasing and perfect.*

A living sacrifice, like Isaac on the altar (**Genesis 22**), we position ourselves in Christ on the cross-- death to self and the ways of the flesh, and thereby alive to God so that resurrection power can freely work in us the life of Christ. In the sequel to this current work which will be called **Cleansing The Temple**, I will spend considerably more time dealing with the Old Testament symbols and types of the Aaronic and Levitical Priesthood, demonstrating how our precious Lord Christ is revealed, not only in each and every sacrifice, but throughout the Tabernacle in the wilderness, as well the Tabernacle of David, and the Temple of Solomon later in the history of the children of Israel.

It suffices to say that our Priesthood is not of either of these Old Testament forms. The Book of **Hebrews** systematically reveals that we again inherit something better. We inherit a better Priesthood based on a better covenant, with better promises-- It's the Melchizedek Priesthood: an eternal priesthood of worship... in songs of praise, in dedicated lives,

*Chapter 2- A Royal Priesthood*

in massively productive endeavors in every conceivable realm of Kingdom activity. And we lay it all at the feet of our most precious, glorious, and loving Husband-- the Lord Jesus Christ.

So we see that in our spirit, in our soul, and in our body we can worship God. The spirit as the innermost part possesses God-consciousness that we may contact God. As Jesus told the woman at the well in **John 4:24...** *God is Spirit- and those who worship Him must worship in spirit and in truth.* The soul is our **self**, the medium between our spirit and our body, and has self-conscious allowing us to develop a distinct personality. The body is the external part of our being, possessing world-consciousness and allows us to contact the material world. The body contains the soul, whereas the soul is the vessel that contains the spirit. In the spirit, God as **the Spirit** dwells; in the soul-- **our self** dwells; and in the body, all our physical senses dwell.

God sanctifies us first, by taking possession of our spirit through regeneration... (**John 3:5, 6**); second, as the life-giving Spirit from our spirit He spread himself saturating and transforming our soul (**2 Cor. 3:18**), and finally-- He quickens or makes spiritually alive our mortal body through our soul (**Romans 8:11 & 13**) by His power... which will inevitably lead to our bodily transfiguration (**Phil. 3:21**). We are blameless when we are born-again and all our sin-- past, present, and future are under **the blood of Christ**, and yet we are sanctified and cleanse daily as we maintain an attitude of humility, surrender, and in repentance and confession maintain unbroken communion with God.

The corporate Body of Christ is gaining an expanding awareness of the need for surrendered hearts; the need for greater spiritual growth as we worship the Living God in spirit and in truth. This felt need will continue to carry greater and greater weight because God the Holy Spirit is preparing the Bride of Christ, who will make herself ready for her coming Bridegroom (**Rev.19:7**). In not being conformed to this world system, we are not assimilated by it, but having been separated unto God-- we experience the continual transformation of our soul by the Lord Spirit in us. Transformation is the inward metabolic process in which God works to spread His divine life and nature throughout every part of our being, in particular the soul, which brings Christ and His riches into our being-- this new element gradually replacing the old, natural element. This is how we are transformed into His image, (**2 Cor. 3:18**)-- conformed to the image of the firstborn Son of God as His many brethren (**Rom. 8:29**).

After presenting our body, we need to have our mind continually renewed. When we set our mind on the spirit (**Rom. 8:6**) renewal is possible and actually automatic. We do our part, God faithfully does His part. Our mind is the leading part of the soul, and as it is renewed, then

our will, emotion, imagination, motives, aspirations-- all follow suit to be renewed also. In this process we then **prove the will of God**. In the book of **Romans** up to Chapter 12 we see that we whom God has chosen, called, redeemed, justified, sanctified, and conformed unto His image are to be members one of another in the living out of the Body of Christ. This Body of Christ is the epitome of God's divine revelation; the divine life for divine expression.

We are one Body in Christ in organic union with Him. This union makes us one in life not only with Him, but also with all other members of His Body. The Body is not an organization but rather an organism produced by the union in life that we have in Christ. God's purpose in salvation is to have Christ reproduced in multiplied millions of saints that we may all become members of His Body. We each need the function of all other members-- coordinated together and actively practicing Body life toward the ultimate goal of complete preparation of the Bride. See, beloved-- our Lord Jesus is not coming back for a harlot; not for a lukewarm, worldly, dispassionate game player. He will only return when the Bride is fully prepared-- having made herself ready for her Divine Bridegroom. I find it almost laughable, and often pathetic-- the over-emphasis on misguided teachings about the rapture of the church, and the end time prophetic scenario. So many are predicting one thing or another about how imminent our Lord's return is. Rapture theology is part of our God's economy, but it will happen according to His agenda and timetable **only**.

Sorry, friend... the Bride is nowhere near ready. We have much to do, and it will take some time. Across generations we all need to get committed whole-heartedly to the program. My grown children and little grandchildren, my generation, and even the elder generation that is mature in years... all and every one of us are needed in this epic transformation. We will look at the future effects of our growing unity in the Body in coming chapters.

Potentially in everything we are and do we worship: In how we care for our bodies by fitness, proper diet, appropriate rest and recreation (See [\*Maker's Diet\*](#) by Dr. Jordan Rubin); our personal hygiene, our dress, our home environment, our family relationships, our church involvement-- both locally and globally, our vocations, hobbies, recreation, our giving, our reaching out to others in need... especially the lost- in peril without God... every waking moment we can commit as an act of worship to our God, who is worthy of all praise and adoration.

Our living out our lives as Priests unto God, rejoicing in all things with a heart of worship, is the catalyst that manifests the Kingdom. Jesus said that the Kingdom of Heaven has drawn near (**Matt. 4:17**). In Him is the Kingdom for He is the King, and now with His indwelling life-expanding



Chapter 2- A Royal Priesthood

Spirit dwelling within us, we carry the Kingdom wherever we are and in whatever we do. Like the song by the group **Petra** says, "**There is a road inside of you... the road to Zion's in your heart**". The Kingdom is within us, crying for full release in all facets of our daily lives. We will be studying many of the references to **Zion** (the city of God) in the Bible, and delve in detail into the 14 parables of the Kingdom... as well as its "Constitution" (**the Beatitudes**) where the Lord Jesus taught about the Kingdom in great depth.

In looking again at **1 Peter 2:9** with respect to our being a **Royal Priesthood**, we need to see it in this way: We are born of God. Just like Jesus was conceived in the womb of Mary by the Holy Spirit, each of us who are truly born again-- is also born of the self-same Holy Spirit.

*John 3:5-8... Jesus answered, Truly, truly, I say to you, Unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter into the Kingdom of God. That which is born of the flesh is flesh, and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit. Do not marvel that I say to you, You must be born anew. The wind blows where it wills, and you hear the sound of it, but you do not know where it comes from and where it goes; so is everyone who is born of the Spirit.*

You are either born once (physically) and die twice (physically and spiritually), or you are born twice and die once. Of course if you live long enough to experience the actual rapture of the church in the return of our Lord, you could be born twice (physically and spiritually) and never suffer death at all! That would definitely be the ultimate! When I considered myself a Buddhist in the late 60's and early 70's, I had the misguided notion about reincarnation and was motivated to be a better person solely for the selfish motive of returning as a higher life form with better circumstances. When I came to the knowledge of God's truth in the mid-70's, I rejected all the idolatrous and deceptive lies of the evil one in the false religions that I had become enamored with.

The stark difference between the One and Only Way to God in Christ Jesus, and the pandemic view of "many roads" to God foisted on a gullible mankind by the rebel prince of darkness-- makes our presentation of the Good News controversial to say the least. The world calls us religious bigots, hypocrites, and myopic-- and when not being offensive, they pity us for not being open-minded and in touch with reality.

*2 Corinthians 4:1-6... Therefore having this ministry as we have been shown mercy, we do not lose heart; But we have renounced the hidden things of shame, not walking in craftiness nor adulterating the word of God, but **by the manifestation of the truth commending ourselves to every conscience of men before God.** And even if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled in those who are perishing, In whom the god of*

***this age has blinded the thoughts of the unbelievers that the illumination of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God, might not shine on them.***

*For we do not preach ourselves but Christ Jesus as Lord, and ourselves as your slaves for Jesus' sake. **Because the God who said, 'Out of darkness light shall shine', is the One who shined in our hearts to illuminate the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ.***

Also: **2 Cor. 2:14-17 (NKJV)** ... *Now thanks be to God who always leads us in triumph in Christ, and through us diffuses the fragrance of His knowledge in every place. For we are to God the fragrance of Christ among those who are being saved and among those who are perishing. To the one we are the aroma of death to death, and to the other the aroma of life to life. And who is sufficient for these things? For we are not, as so many, peddling the word of God; but as of sincerity, but as from God, we speak the truth in the sight of God in Christ.*

And yet again: **2 Cor. 5:17-21 (LSM)**... *So then if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation. The old things have passed away; behold, they have become new. But all things are out from God, who has reconciled us to Himself through Christ and **has given us the ministry of reconciliation**; Namely, that God in Christ was reconciling the world to Himself, not accounting their offenses to them, and **has put in us the word of reconciliation. On behalf of Christ then we are ambassadors, as God entreats you through us we beseech you on behalf of Christ, be reconciled to God. Him who did not know sin He made sin on our behalf that we might become the righteousness of God in Him.***

If God is in fact our Heavenly Father, the Lord Jesus Christ is King of the Eternal Kingdom, and we by the power of His Holy Spirit have been born into the Kingdom for such a time as this. Children of kings and queens are automatically royal blood. The bloodline has certain requirements of conduct and training, and those considered princes and princesses in a royal household are held to a higher standard than common man. Please consider getting a copy of the outstanding book ***Revisiting the Kingdom*** by [Dr. Myles Munroe](#) in which he describes the protocol of a royal family, and applies it thoughtfully to our required training in Kingdom principles.

Therefore whether you feel like it or not, you are the child of The Eternal King and are therefore by the nature of your re-creation **forever Royalty**. Let no false humility blind you to this truth; but allow true humility in the character of Christ to cause you to always think of others more highly than yourself (**Philippians 2:3**). This reality of royal standing in Christ can never be taken away from you... although

Chapter 2- A Royal Priesthood

unfortunately you can relinquish your positional authority and delegated power of dominion by willful rebellion and sin-- like Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden. Always remember:

**1 Cor. 6: 9-11...** *Do you not know that **the unrighteous will not inherit the Kingdom of God? Do not be deceived.** Neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor homosexuals, nor sodomites, nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners will inherit the Kingdom of God. And such were some of you. **But you were washed, but you were sanctified, but you were justified in the name of the Lord Jesus by the Spirit of our God.***

Like in the parable of the wise and foolish virgins (**Matthew 25:1-13**), all are apparently saved since they are virgins awaiting their Bridegroom, with the oil of the Holy Spirit in their 'vessels'. Their light was shining- which speaks of the presence of God, although the **foolish ones allowed the oil to run out** and were therefore unprepared to meet the Bridegroom at His return. **We must be prepared at all times, since we do not know when the Lord is returning-- and individually we certainly don't know when any one of us will be called home;** all of our days are in His hands.

Therefore **Royal Priesthood-** walk soberly before God, at any moment ready to give an account before Him of every thought, every word, and every action... **in the Holy Fear of the Lord** which is after all the beginning of wisdom (see **Proverbs Chapters 1-4**) .



### **Chapter 3- A Holy Nation: Consecrated and Set Apart**

**1 Peter 2:9...** *But you are a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a **Holy Nation**, a people acquired for a possession, so that you may tell out the virtues of Him who has called you out of darkness into His marvelous light.*

**Holiness** is a difficult concept to wrap your head around. Too much of what's been promoted as the *Steps to Holiness* has been a list of dos and don'ts; legalistic dead letters of the law-- often from a self-righteous motivation. Of course, the primary list that mankind received through God's chosen people-- the children of Israel was **the Ten Commandments**. Even before Moses delivered the Tablets from the heights of Mt. Sinai, God's prophet witnessed the depravity of man in going after idols and the ways of the flesh. They had broken every commandment at the foot of the mountain. Those who had seen God's miracles of deliverance from 400 years of slavery and healing of every disease so that they all walked out of Egypt **every whit whole**, had grown impatient... tired of waiting for the man of God to bring them answers and direction from on high.

A good working **definition of Holiness** is the manifestation of a life where the Holy Spirit is in control, doing the will of the Father. He, the Holy Spirit-- is doing the living through us as surrendered vessels. The law was therefore our **schoolmaster** to lead us to Christ:

**Galatians 3:19-27 (KJV)...** *What purpose then does the law serve? It was added because of our transgression, till **the Seed** should come to whom the promise was made; and it was appointed through angels by the hand of a mediator... Is the law then against the promises of God? Certainly not! For if there had been a law given which could have given life, truly righteousness would have been by the law. But the Scripture has confined all under sin, that the promise by faith in Jesus Christ might be given to those who believe.*

*But before faith came, we were kept under guard by the law, kept for the faith which would afterward be revealed. **Therefore the law was our tutor to bring us to Christ, that we might be justified by faith.** But after faith has come, we are no longer under a tutor. For you are all sons*

*Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!*

*of God through faith in Christ Jesus. For as many of you as were baptized into Christ have put on Christ.*

The law was given to reveal to us the futility of our effort in striving to attain such a level of obedience on our own, apart from the indwelling power of resurrection life. When human hearts are unsanctified, obedience to God's laws and ways is impossible. Only through regeneration, which occurs after repentance, confession, and calling on the name of the Lord-- does anyone have the slightest chance of growing in righteousness. This is a surrendered walk of Holiness; not by our doing, it is God doing. And yet we have responsibility.

**Philippians 2:12-16a (Ism)**... *So then, my beloved, even as you have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much rather in my absence, **work out your own salvation with fear and trembling; For it is God who operates in you both the willing and the working for His good pleasure.** Do all things without murmurings and reasonings-- that you may be blameless and guileless, children of God without blemish in the midst of a crooked and perverted generation, among whom you shine as luminaries in the world, **Holding forth the word of life**...*

This daily salvation results from taking the very Christ whom we live, experience, and enjoy as our inward as well as outward pattern. What we need to do then is to obey the inner operating God who is working in us both the willing and the working needed that our daily salvation may be carried out... moment by moment. The willing is within, an internal process in our souls... in our respective wills. This again indicates that God's operation in us begins from our spirit and spreads into our mind, emotion, and will, and as we saw in **Romans 12:1 & 2** eventually into our physical body.

Murmurings from our emotion and reasonings in our will both frustrate us from carrying out our daily salvation to the fullest extent, which prevents us from experiencing and enjoying Christ's life to the uttermost, and is disobedience to God. When we obey it allows God to slay all murmurings and reasonings and we are then blameless in our outward behavior, and guileless in our inward character. The Greek word translated **luminaries** refers to reflecting the light of the sun. We believers as luminaries when we are blameless, shine in the world. We do not possess any light in ourselves, but have the heavenly ability to reflect the light of Christ... although through the in-dwelling Holy Spirit we radiate His light from within.

As Paul says: **Galatians 2:19,20**... *For I through law have died to law that I might live to God. I am crucified with Christ; and it is no longer I who live, but it is Christ who lives in me; and the life which I now live in*

Chapter 3- A Holy Nation

*the flesh I live in faith, the faith of the Son of God, who loved me and gave Himself for me.*

The '**no longer I**' in the verse does not mean a life where there is an exchange with Christ in and we go out. As regenerate people we have both '**the old I**' which has been crucified, and '**the new I**' which has God as life added to it. This '**new I**' is therefore '**the old I**' terminated, then resurrected and transformed with Christ living in me, one life and one living. The only time the old man manifests is when we succumb to the temptations of the world, the flesh, and the devil.

**I reiterate:** When human hearts are unsanctified, obedience to God's laws and ways is impossible. Only through regeneration, which occurs after repentance, confession, and calling on the name of the Lord-- does anyone have the slightest chance of growing in righteousness, which is a walk of Holiness, and yet it is not our doing, it is God. Our responsibility is submission... surrender on a moment by moment basis to the life-giving indwelling Spirit in our union with Him.

**1 Corinthians 6:17;19...** *But he who is joined to the Lord is one spirit... Or do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit within you, whom you have from God, and you are not your own. We are to allow God who now dwells in us, to saturate our body and express Himself through our body as His temple. Therefore we agree that it is no longer about "I", but all about Christ, and this reality in agreement and surrender allows us to say as Paul says **the life which I now live in the flesh, I live in faith...** the faith of the Son of God.*

In three of the four gospels (**Matthew 10:38;16:24, Mark 8:34, and Luke 9:23; 14:27**) we have Jesus declaring ***If anyone desire to come after me, let Him deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.*** Luke's gospel (**9:23**) is the only one which adds ***take up his cross daily...*** This is profound! It is a daily dying that brings resurrection life. This gives new meaning to the call "**Dead man walking...**". In not conforming to the world but being transformed, with the mind renewed, we present ourselves daily as the holy temple and holy sacrifice. This will give us true joy for it allows the Holy Spirit to fully guide our growth process in power. This life blossoms with the fruit and gifts of the Spirit released in manifestation.

**Holiness is not a divine suggestion... it is mandatory!**

**1 Peter 1:13-16...** *Therefore girding up the loins of your mind and being sober, set your hope perfectly on the grace being brought to you at the*

*revelation of Jesus Christ. As children of obedience, do not be fashioned according to the former lusts in your ignorance; but according to the Holy One who called you, you yourselves also be holy in all your manner of life; Because it is written, "**You shall be Holy because I AM Holy.**"*

In biblical times when men who wore long robes were going to get busy working, or moving rapidly, they would pull the long length of their garment and tuck it into their belt which allowed for greater freedom of movement. This expression of **girding up** here implied focused single minded obedience, not vacillating between opinions and carnal reasonings. It requires us to be calm and clear in mind, without being disturbed by cares, fear, or anxiety. Not being **fashioned by former lusts** is parallel to **Romans 12:1,2** quoted earlier. It also refers indirectly to the path of our daily walk as God's elect in this world.

Verse **15** is therefore critical: **The Holy One** (triune God) is the choosing Father, the redeeming Son, and the sanctifying Holy Spirit. The Father regenerates His elect, and imparts His holy nature into us. The Son redeems us with His blood from our former manner of life, and the Spirit sanctifies us according to the Father's holy nature, separating us from anything contrary to God. This is the only way that via the Holy nature and presence of the Father, that we may be holy in all manner of life, even as God Himself is holy. **The Holy One as the Father** has called us, and in regeneration has produced a holy family; He is a Holy Father who wants and has holy children. Therefore we must walk in a holy manner of life. If there is unholiness, the Father will become our Judge, and will deal with us appropriately but definitely strictly. As stated earlier the Royal Seed line has stricter requirements of conduct. The fear that is stated earlier in the **Philippians 2** verse is directed to our potential rebellion causing our Holy Father to judge us.

This is all related and in line with **The Kingdom**; God's governmental rule in His household, the family of God-- and through us to the outermost parts of the earth. He rules by example which is the **Image of Christ** and His character revealed in the Four Gospels primarily but also throughout the Scriptures. He desires to mature each of us family members to **represent** in His Image. That is the only way the world will turn and be saved, delivered, healed, and translated from the bankrupt kingdom of darkness to the unfathomable riches of the Eternal Kingdom of God.

**"The Revelation of Jesus Christ"** stated in **1 Peter 1:13** has a double meaning: Ultimately it refers to **His Glorious Appearing** at the 2nd Advent (Second Coming); but more personally it speaks in a prophetic layer of meaning as in Paul's statement in:



Chapter 3- A Holy Nation

**Galatians 1:15, 16...** *But when it pleased God, who set me apart from my mother's womb and called me through His grace, **To reveal His Son in me that I might announce Him as the gospel among the Gentiles...***

and also: **Galatians 4:19..** *My children, with whom **I travail again in birth until Christ is formed in you...***

**This is it! This is deep beyond measure!!** This is greater than any fantasy story, science fiction, or any other historical reality! The greatest universal drama of all time is being played out on the stage called planet earth. The holy angels of the Trinity; the rebel forces of darkness that tremble because they all know the time is short; the unfallen worlds of beings that are yet hidden in the bosom of the Father... should He privilege them with the awareness of this- now approaching 7,000 year Epic- are all hanging on with bated breath to see what the Church will do! Will the Church arise and shine in one accord and fulfill the prophecy spoken by the Father to the Son?--

**Matthew 22:44; Psalm 110:1(KJV)...** *The Lord [Jehovah Father] said to my Lord [Jehovah Lord Jesus the Son], **Sit at My right hand, till I make Your enemies Your footstool...***

**Romans 16:20...** *Now the God of Peace will **crush satan under your feet shortly.** The grace of our Lord Jesus be with you.*

**1 Corinthians 15:23-27a...** *But each one in his own order: the firstfruits, Christ; then those who are Christ's at His coming; Then the end, when He delivers up the Kingdom to His God and Father, once He has abolished all rule and all authority and power. For **He must reign until God puts all His enemies under His feet.** Death, the last enemy, is being abolished. For He has subjected all things under His feet..*

The mystery that the unsaved world does not fathom is that **Jesus Christ is the Head and the Church is His Body.** He sits at the right hand of the Father interceding in our behalf while we His Body are to live and breathe and have our being and all activity under the anointing of the expansive Holy Spirit working through us **in unity.** God promises that He will crush satan under the feet of those who live the Body life, the Glorious Church; which is why local church activity is so critical. We must be embedded in the Greater Body of Christ via the local church-- fitly joined together with one mind, one heart, in one accord worshiping and serving by expanding and advancing Christ's Kingdom in the earth... as it is in Heaven.

**Isaiah 60:1-5...** *Arise! Shine! For your light has come, and the **Glory of Jehovah has risen upon you.** For, behold, the darkness will cover the earth, and deep darkness the peoples; But Jehovah will rise*

*Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!*

*upon you. And **nations will come to your light, and kings to the brightness of your rising. Lift up your eyes and see: They all gather together; they come to you;** Your sons will come from far away, and your daughters will be carried on the hip. Then you will see and you will beam, and **your heart will be in awe and swell with joy, For the abundance of the sea will turn to you. The wealth of the nations will come to you.***

The sea of humanity and the wealth of human capital... treasures out of darkness!

**This speaks of the mission of Christ and the Church... His Holy Nation!**

#### **Chapter 4- A Warrior-Priesthood: More than Conquerors**

**Psalm 149 (KJV)... Praise the Lord! Sing to the Lord a new song, and His praise in the congregation of saints.** *Let Israel rejoice in their Maker; Let the children of Zion be joyful in their King. Let them praise His name with the dance; Let them sing praises to Him with the timbrel and harp. For the Lord takes pleasure in His people; He will beautify the humble with salvation.*

*Let the saints be joyful in glory; Let them sing aloud in their beds. Let the high praises of God be in their mouth, And a two-edged sword in their hand, To execute vengeance on the nations, and punishments on the peoples; To bind their kings with chains, And their nobles with fetters of iron; To execute on them the written judgments-- This honor have all His saints.*

So far we understand and accept that **we are Chosen**... set apart for God's purposes. Also we recognize that we are to be **Holy**... receiving imputed righteousness through the cross of Christ, and imparted righteousness as we allow the **Holy Spirit** to *manifest the character of Christ in and through us*. And we can rejoice that we are a **Royal Priesthood**-- as the 24 elders of the angelic host sing:

**Rev. 5:9-10...** *You are worthy to take the scroll and to open its seals, for You were slain and have purchased for God by Your blood- men out of every tribe and tongue and people and nation, and have made them [kings] and priests to our God; and they shall reign on the earth.*

And yet we must also recognize that we are a **Warrior-Priesthood**... true **witnesses** (in the original Greek meaning **martyrs**) of the Lord. In the above **Psalm 149:6** it speaks of "*the high praises of God in our mouths, and a two-edged sword in our hands.*" Although there are many times in the history of the people of God-- both Israel and the Church where warfare was necessary, and we cannot preclude that possibility out of hand in our future-- before our Lord's return, I believe this is primarily speaking of our spiritual warfare. Truly "**This honor have all the saints.**" The Lord by His Holy Spirit is training our hands to wage war. With radical terrorism posing a continual menace to America and Israel, we may again need to learn to effectively take up arms in defense of our homelands. But in our present day context this is by our learning to effectively wield the sword of the Spirit which is the Word of God.

*Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!*

**Hebrews 4:12...** *For the word of God is living and operative and sharper than any two-edged sword, and piercing even to the dividing of soul and spirit and of [bone] and marrow, and able to discern the thoughts and intentions of the heart.*

As the marrow is hidden deep within the bone, so is the human spirit concealed deep in the soul of each man and each woman. Just as one has to break (divide) the bone to reveal the marrow, so likewise the dividing of the spirit from the soul will require the 'breaking' of the soul. The doubting mind prone to reasonings apart from God's will revealed in His Holy Word, or discerned in communion with God in prayer- struggles to believe. Our spirit contacts, receives, contains, and experiences God. The release of the Holy Spirit in union with our human spirit allows us to enjoy Christ and all of His grace toward us, and brings our wandering mind and emotions to focus on all the truth that our Lord reveals to us step by step... line upon line... precept upon precept. If our conscience is clear- and our communion with God unbroken, then our thoughts will be in line with and obedient to the Lord. Since our thoughts affect our intentions, we can therefore carry out our wholesome thoughts with godly intentions.

We must know that the **Logos of the Word** (the canon of Scripture, which is the whole counsel of God from **Genesis 1:1 to Revelation 22:21**) becomes the **Rhema** or the Living Word of God in our mouths ignited by the Holy Spirit. Under His careful guiding hand it is better than a surgeon's scalpel... able to separate, discern, and make clear distinction between the thoughts and intentions of the heart. But this **Sword of the Spirit** is but one part... albeit the most significant- of **the whole armor of God** with respect to pulling down the enemy's strongholds.

**Ephesians 6:10-18...** *Finally, be empowered in the Lord and in the might of His strength. Put on the whole armor of God that you may be able to stand against the stratagems of the devil. For our wrestling [warfare] is not against blood and flesh but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the world-rulers of this darkness, against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenlies.*

*Therefore take up the whole armor of God that you may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand. Stand therefore, having girded your loins with truth and having put on the breastplate of righteousness. And having shod your feet with the firm foundation of the gospel of peace; Besides all these, having taken up the shield of faith, with which you will be able to quench all the flaming darts of the evil one. And receive the helmet of salvation and the sword of the Spirit, which... is the word of God, by means of all prayer and petition, praying at every time in [the Spirit] and watching unto this in all perseverance and petition concerning all the saints.*

*Chapter 4- A Warrior-Priesthood*

The rulers, authorities, and world-rulers of this darkness are the rebel angels who followed Lucifer (satan) in his rebellion against God. They now rule under his delegated authority in the heavenlies over the nations of the world. We see these referenced in **Daniel 10:20** as the prince of Persia and the prince of Greece. We must therefore know that our adversaries not only exist in the hidden form of demonic powers, but that whether or not we are willing to fight and resist their onslaught- they do not and will not rest until they achieve our defeat.

This unrelenting warfare is 24/7 against mankind and especially against the children of God, because of their wicked jealousy and vengeful desire to cause us to fall into sin, short-circuiting the fulfillment of our assigned destiny. Too much of the church gravitates between two faithless extremes: on the one hand either not believing in a devil and kingdom of darkness- and willfully sticking their heads in the sand seeking to ignore the danger, or on the other hand- spending so much time finding the enemy behind every bush and circumstance, that they take their eyes off of Jesus. Both of these draw into the sin of not believing and fully trusting in the Lord and His Word.

If we seek to live by **Hebrews 12:1** we will fix our eyes upon Jesus, who is the author and finisher of our faith... and who by His Spirit will give us the gift of spiritual discernment (discerning of spirits) so that we can correctly 'diagnose' and respond appropriately to all the schemes of the adversary, for we must not be ignorant of his devices.

*Hebrews 12:1,2... Therefore let us also, having so great a cloud of witnesses surrounding us, put away every encumbrance and the sin which so easily entangles us and run with endurance the race which is set before us, Looking away unto Jesus, the Author and Perfecter of our faith, who for the joy set before Him endured the cross, despising the shame, and has sat down on the right hand of the throne of God.*

In the sequel to this book- ***Cleansing the Temple***, I will do a more comprehensive study of not only the armor of God and our being clothed with Christ, but also the various aspects of our spiritual warfare and its strategies. For in depth studies on this critical area of Christian life, please consider reading ***Living in the Combat Zone*** by Rick Renner, ***Overcoming the Adversary*** by Mark Bubeck, and the timeless classic ***The Christian in Complete Armour (3 Volumes)*** by William Gurnall. Suffice it to say in this general overview of Kingdom living that we have enlisted in God's army, and must learn to fight the good fight of faith.

*1 Timothy 6:11,12... But you, O man of God... pursue righteousness, godliness, faith, love, endurance, meekness. Fight the good fight of the*

*Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!*

*faith; lay hold on the eternal life, to which you were called and have confessed the good confession before many witnesses.*

When an enlistee joins a branch of the military he or she agrees to submit to the leadership, discipline, and protocol of military life. It is remarkable how quickly a 'buck private' becomes a true soldier with some understanding of his weaponry, military strategy, and need to consistently fit into their position in the fighting unit. Of utmost importance is to not break rank, and to not hesitate upon command.

Real warfare takes the inexperienced soldier to the next level, with each encounter building upon the previous ones... honing and perfecting one's skills for combat. Likewise in the life of the church and each member individually there are spiritual battles to engage in, and with God's grace-to win in order to gain ground, and help rescue and transform a lost world. And in this context our singleness of purpose must be fulfilling:

**2 Corinthians 4:1-7...** *Therefore having this ministry as we have been shown mercy, we do not lose heart; But we have renounced the hidden things of shame, not walking in craftiness nor adulterating the word of God, but by the manifestation of the truth commending ourselves to every conscience of men before God.*

*And even **if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled to those who are perishing, in whom the god of this age has blinded the thoughts of the unbelievers that the illumination of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God, might not shine on them.** For we do not preach ourselves but Christ Jesus as Lord, and ourselves as your slaves for Jesus' sake.*

*Because the God who said, **Out of darkness light shall shine, is the One who shined in our hearts to illuminate the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ. But **we have this treasure in earthen vessels** that the excellency of the power may be of God and not out of us.***

God's shining in the universe produced the old creation; now His shining in our hearts makes us a new creation which makes us able to exalt Christ as Lord. Again God's shining in us produces His new covenant ministers and our ministry, treasures in earthen vessels- the glory of Christ hidden and revealed in us. This is resurrection power which when seen at work in and through us, brings glory to God since it is apparently not inherently of us. Against all opposition and under the leading of the Holy Spirit we are to let the light of the gospel shine into men's hearts. It bears repeating:

**2 Corinthians 5:18-21...** *But all things are out from God, who has reconciled us to Himself through Christ and has given to us the ministry of reconciliation; Namely, that God in Christ was reconciling the world to Himself, not accounting their offenses to them, and has put in us the word of reconciliation. On behalf of Christ then we are ambassadors, as God entreats you through us; we beseech you on behalf of Christ, Be reconciled to God. Him who did not know sin He made sin on our behalf that we might become the righteousness of God in Him.*

We have the ministry of reconciliation delegated to us as ambassadors since Christ reconciled the world to himself on the cross. We must bring the treasures out of darkness, imploring men and women on Christ's behalf to be reconciled to God. This ministry cannot be taken lightly, for the adversary will not give up his deceived captives easily. He will continually unleash all the forces at his disposal to attempt to defeat our efforts. How do we prevail? Where is our combat heaviest? Where do we gain the insight and wisdom of our Commander to block, rout, and destroy the enemy? **In the arena of prayer and praise!**

I like what outstanding Bible teacher Dr. Perry Stone once taught on the armor of God (***Mannafest*** broadcast on Christian networks or streaming on the Internet). His entire catalog of resources available via his website [[www.perrystone.org](http://www.perrystone.org)] is worthy of in depth study. He said that besides the whole armor of God listed in scripture, we also have two javelins that are called **Prayer and Praise!** Besides our sword which is the living and indwelling Word of God- we also have these two offensive weapons that we can launch against the enemy moment by moment.

Let's look a little more closely at: **Psalm 149: v1...***sing His praise in the congregation of His faithful ones. v3...**Let them praise His name with dancing; Let them sing psalms to Him [with instruments]. v6...**Let the high praises of God be in their throats...*

These verses among many others in the scriptures hold a deep secret to our consistent victory in spiritual warfare: that is prayer with praise- which is a dramatically effective form of sung prayer. These combined will change the spiritual atmosphere in our favor. Time and again heartfelt sincere intercession and the attitude of vocal praise in spite of the circumstances lead to victory against all odds. The five books that our contemporary Bible collectively calls **Psalms**, are prayers- agonizing intercession, petition, crying out to God... intersperse with praise and adoration- all set to music.

Several examples reveal the powerful truth that God inhabits the praises of His people (**Psalm 22:3...** ***You who sit enthroned upon the praises of Israel***). The first deals with righteous king Jehoshaphat of the tribe of Judah who caused the people to seek the Lord to avert the onslaught of

enemies united against them. In response to their humility, brokenness, and supplication- the word of the Lord through His prophet Jahaziel declared in verse 17:

**2 Chronicles 20:17-24...** *It is not for you to fight in this battle. Station yourselves; **stand and see the Salvation of Jehovah among you, O Judah and Jerusalem. Do not be afraid nor dismayed. Tomorrow go out to meet them, for Jehovah is with you.***

*And Jehoshaphat bowed his head with his face to the ground, and all Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem fell before Jehovah to worship [the Lord]. And the Levites... rose up to praise Jehovah the God of Israel **with an exceedingly loud voice.** And they rose up early in the morning and went out to the wilderness of Tekoa. And as they went out, Jehoshaphat stood up and said, Hear me, O Judah and you inhabitants of Jerusalem. **Believe in Jehovah your God, and you will be established; believe in His prophets, and you will succeed.***

*And when he had taken counsel with the people, **he appointed them to sing to Jehovah and give thanks in holy array** as they went before the army and say, **Give thanks to Jehovah, for His lovingkindness endures forever.** And when they began to **shout in song and to praise,** Jehovah set ambushes for the children of Ammon, Moab, and Mount Seir, who were coming out against Judah; and they were struck.*

*And the children of Ammon and Moab stood up against the inhabitants of Mount Seir to absolutely destroy and demolish them; and when they had made an end of the inhabitants of Seir, every man helped to destroy his neighbor. And Judah came to the wilderness watchtower and looked upon the multitude; and there they were, fallen corpses on the ground, and no one escaped.*

Another clear example is played out in **1 Samuel 16-NKJV**. Sometime after God had anointed David by the hand of His servant Samuel... **v13...** *Then Samuel took the horn of oil and anointed him in the midst of his brothers; and the Spirit of the Lord came upon David from that day forward.* As punishment for King Saul's willful rebellion against God, we see in **v14...** *But the Spirit of the Lord departed from Saul, and a distressing spirit from the Lord troubled him.* In the rest of this chapter we see that David as a skilled musician was commissioned to play for Saul when he was terrorized by this evil spirit and as it says in **v23...** *And so it was, whenever the spirit from God was upon Saul, that David would... play... Then Saul would become refreshed and well, and the distressing spirit would depart from him.*

A New Testament example of this pivotal truth in our ongoing, relentless spiritual warfare- is demonstrated in the lives of Paul and Silas, as we see in **Acts 16**. After casting out a spirit of divination from a woman in the



*Chapter 4- A Warrior-Priesthood*

city of Philippi, they were both arrested, beaten severely, and chained in a dungeon with many prisoners. Most of us- probably myself included- would have felt troubled as if God had deserted us. We find a completely opposite reaction in the lives of these anointed saints of God.

**Acts 16:25...** *But at midnight Paul and Silas were praying and singing hymns to God, and the prisoners were listening to them. Suddenly there was a great earthquake, so that the foundations of the prison were shaken; and immediately all the doors were opened **and everyone's chains were loosed.***

This again demonstrate the inherent power of humble prayer and praise in spite of very difficult circumstances, which drives the forces of darkness away (albeit temporarily), and empowers the holy angels of God to move into the fray with divinely directed intervention.

**2 Corinthians 10:4-6...** *For the weapons of our warfare are not fleshly but powerful before God for the overthrowing of strongholds, as we overthrow reasonings and every high thing rising up against the knowledge of God, and take captive every thought unto the obedience of Christ. **And we are ready to punish all disobedience when your obedience is fulfilled.***

These divinely powerful weapons pull down the carnal reasonings and thoughts that are the strongholds of satan. But although we often hear verses 4 and 5 taught, I have never heard a minister include and stress verse 6: **our obedience and submission to the Lord are the prerequisites for victory** in doing consistently what the rest of this portion of scripture states.

**James 4:7-10 (NKJV)...** *Therefore submit to God. Resist the devil and he will flee from you. Draw near to God and He will draw near to you. cleanse your hands, you sinners; and purify your hearts, you double-minded. Lament and mourn and weep... Humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord, and He will lift you up.*

We wage war according to the Spirit- not prematurely, but rather in response to the mind of Christ- whose agenda, strategies, and timing are perfect. For example, when we receive a burden to pray for someone's salvation we must not ignore it, nor relent when we do begin to pray. We must continue to hold that individual before the Lord in prayer whenever he or she comes to mind. We must **plead the Blood of Jesus** over their lives, praying for the Holy Spirit's conviction of sin, righteousness, and judgment to come upon them. We can then anticipate and look for the opportunity or divine appointment that the Holy Spirit will orchestrate to allow us to speak into that person's life according to their specific, tangible, and immediate need. We remain humble and receptive to the

Spirit's leading in conversation with the person so that He can effectively apply the scalpel of the Word to deal directly with their need in the moment. This is genuinely how we draw people into the Kingdom... not out of fear, but because of God's love, mercy, and direct answer to their heartfelt needs.

One of the problems of the church today is that too many do not recognize the religious spirit of self-righteousness and condemnation that is antithetical to the true nature and ways of the Holy Spirit. Vast numbers of souls that will come into the Kingdom between now and the Lord's return will only come when we selflessly minister the love of Jesus, the broken heart of the Father, and the healing virtue of the Holy Spirit in all humility and with all due respect... no matter what the person's condition. Let us always remember that we were once there too. God's mercy and love are forever unfathomable... let us spread it abroad generously, for it is truly an inexhaustible supply!

Often we will have times of intimate transparency where a soul will respond to the cry of their heart for healing and deliverance. Then we can almost hear the angels rejoice as another child is born into the Kingdom. But again too many times our efforts, our prayers, our words in season, and our pleading in intercession do not **seem** to bear fruit... at least not that we are privileged to see. But only God knows if and when that child of mankind will come to his senses and receive eternal life through the finished work of Christ on the cross.

When I first heard the gospel in 1970 as a UCLA college student, I scoffed with great disdain and animosity toward a friend who apparently lost his mind and had become a Jesus Freak. Little did Tom know the fruit and eternal treasure that will accrue to his heavenly account based upon that one encounter, which was the last time I saw him. Not only did three generations of my entire family (over 14 members) come to the Lord when my wife Robyn and I became Christians, but also many friends and acquaintances that we 'compelled' over time and with much prayer- into the Kingdom. This is our eternal reward: souls... the full reward of the Lamb's sufferings.

**Jude 21-25...** *Keep yourselves in the love of God, awaiting the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ unto eternal life. And on some have mercy, on those who are wavering: Save them by snatching them out of the fire. On others have mercy in fear, hating even the inner garment spotted from the flesh.*

***But to Him who is able to guard you from stumbling and to set you before His glory without blemish in exultation, to the only God our Savior through Jesus Christ our Lord be glory, majesty, might, and authority before all time and now and unto all eternity. AMEN!***

*Part II:*

*The Elementary Principles of Christ*



## **Chapter 5- A Sure Foundation: The Reliability of the Holy Bible**

**Psalm 119:9-16...** *With what should a young man keep his way pure? By guarding it according to Your Word. With all my heart I have sought You; do not let me wander from Your commandments. **In my heart I have treasured up Your Word that I might not sin against You.***

*Blessed are you, O Jehovah; teach me Your statutes. With my lips, I have declared all the ordinances of Your mouth. I have rejoiced in the way of Your testimonies as much as in all riches. I will muse upon Your precepts and regard your ways. I will take delight in Your statutes; I will not forget your Word.*

The Holy Bible from the first book of Genesis to the last book of Revelation is the inspired Word of the Living God. When I was a non-believer, I took up the challenge to disprove the Bible. I was a confused pagan, dabbling in the occult and the New Age movement-and firmly believed that Christianity and belief in the claims of the Scriptures was foolish and misguided. I did not realize that to me, the gospel was veiled-because truly the god of this world had blinded my eyes.

Thankfully, the Lord used the fact that I considered myself open-minded, as a point of entry to reveal Himself and His Truth to me. Inevitably I came to the irrefutable conclusion that the Bible is true, reveals God's heart, and His plan for our salvation through the finished work of Christ on the cross. For anyone to walk the narrow path that leads to true redemption, they must recognize and believe in the inerrancy of Scripture.

In the Holy Bible and otherwise, God spoke by way of revelation, inspiration, and illumination. From about 1400 B.C. over the next 15 centuries- He quietly called some forty men and women into His presence. He spoke the burden of His heart to those chosen forty different people from all walks of life... privileged to write down the story of creation, the fall, the history of His people- and the eternal truths of justification, sanctification, and glorification. His distinct and perfect method of revelation had thereby occurred.

The Almighty Author then carefully guided each of his chosen in the task of writing down what needed to be stated. Each one of the forty was an individual living in different circumstances, with varied levels of education, and who experienced unique personal trials of life. The words of the highly educated Paul are more complicated than those of the supposedly

uneducated Peter. But from Moses to Amos to Malachi to Paul and Peter- and all the other writers, all have the signature of the Holy Spirit and carry the divine approval of Heaven itself.

**Hebrews 1:1, 2...** *God, having spoken of old in many portions and in many ways to the fathers in the prophets, has at the last of these days spoken to us in the Son, whom He appointed Heir of all things, through Whom also He made the universe.*

We find that God's revelation to mankind was through different modes of communication. He often spoke to men through angels. Also at times He spoke with a loud voice or a still small voice. He spoke to men through dreams and visions, and on at least 10 different occasions, He as Christ appeared as the Angel of the Lord. Three examples of Christ's pre-Bethlehem appearances as the Angel of the Lord are when He wrestled with Jacob (**Genesis 32:24-30**), spoke to Moses by way of a burning bush (**Exodus 3:2**), and chose to appear to Joshua as the Captain of Heaven's armies (**Joshua 5:13-15**).

So we recognize that God revealed Himself to mankind through many different ways. But how was He able to ensure that all the different recipients of revelation would record precisely what He intended? In order to understand the concept of *inspiration*, it helps to define the word itself. The term "inspiration" is found only once in the New Testament. **2 Timothy 3:16...** *All scripture is given by inspiration of God...* The Greek word is *theopneustos* and literally means "**God breathed**".

Of all the various theories of inspiration that have been considered in theology, what is known as the **plenary-verbal theory**- that all (plenary) the very words (verbal) of the Bible are inspired by God is the truth. By the testimony of Scripture itself, this can only be the correct view. It does not guarantee the inspiration of any modern translation of the Bible, but deals only with the original Hebrew and Greek languages. Also, it must be remembered that many things recorded in Scripture are accurately stated, but not approved by the God of the Word. Therefore God records many wicked acts such as lying, adultery, murder, polygamy, etc. and yet he sanctions none of this.

**Matthew 4:4...** *But He answered and said, it is written, Man shall not live on bread alone, but on every word that proceeds out through the mouth of God.*

**2 Timothy 3:16,17...** *All scripture is God breathed and profitable for teaching, for conviction, for correction, for instruction in righteousness, that the man of God may be complete, fully equipped for every good work.*

**2 Corinthians 2:12-14...** *But we have received not the spirit of the world but the Spirit which is from God, that we may know the things which have been graciously given to us by God; which things also we speak, not in words taught by human wisdom but in words taught by the Spirit, interpreting spiritual things with spiritual words. But a soulish man does not receive the things of the Spirit of God, for they are foolishness to him and he is not able to know them because they are discerned spiritually.*

**2 Peter 1:19-21 (NKJV)...** *We also have the prophetic word made more sure, which you do well to heed as a light that shines in a dark place, until the day dawns and the morning star rises in your hearts; knowing this first, that **no prophecy of Scripture is of any private interpretation, for prophecy never came by the will of man, but holy men of God spoke as they were moved by the Holy Spirit.***

This recognition of the Bible as the inspired Word of God does not permit error in historical, prophetic, or scientific statements. What has been found with very careful study for many hundreds of years is that in fact all branches of science, history, archaeology, and fulfilled prophecy reveal the seamless accuracy of Scripture. For those who would like to study this in much greater detail, I highly recommend ***Evidence that Demands a Verdict (revised edition- 2 Vols. in 1)*** by Josh McDowell. This among many other reference resources should be added to a Christian's library, in order for one to grow up into the full stature of Christ. Another important title by this author is ***A Ready Defense***. This book prepares a Christian and helps to articulate our precious faith with confidence, and substantial verifiable data.

We therefore see that God chose to reveal Himself and His plan of redemption, and we understand that without inspiration no Scripture would have been written. He called and chose children of mankind to be the emissaries of His revealed will. It is also of critical importance that we recognize that without illumination, no sinner would ever come to Christ. Illumination is precisely the method used by the Holy Spirit to shed his divine light upon all who seek to understand the deep things of God. The Holy Spirit broods over mankind looking for sincere hearts that He can woo to come to Christ.

**2 Corinthians 4:6...** *because the God who said, Out of darkness light shall shine, is **the One who shined in our hearts to illuminate the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ.***

**Hebrews 11:6...** *But without faith it is impossible to be well pleasing to Him, for he who comes forward to God must believe that He is, and **that He is a rewarder of those who diligently seek Him.***

In order to overcome our natural blindness and to break the power of Satan's hold on the mind, the Holy Spirit illuminates His Word- for truly the entrance of His Word gives light (**Psalm 119:130**). It is necessary to

clarify that no Christian should consider illumination as automatic. God has not promised to reveal His profound biblical truths to any believer who will not search the Scriptures for himself or herself... although there will be many teachers as guides along the way.

**2 Timothy 2:15...** *Be diligent to present yourself approved to God, a worker who does not need to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth.*

There are many branches of so-called Christendom that are confused with liberal theology which does profound damage to the Scripture, and is an offense to God. The sure foundation of God's holy Word must not be compromised with carnal reasonings. My wife and I and our children attended a Baptist church in the West LA area for nearly 10 years in the 1980's. My wife Robyn worked at the Church elementary school that both our son and daughter attended. We dearly loved the church family including and especially the pastor and his entire family. His children and ours were and still are very close, knowing each other from kindergarten through college. Unfortunately in the late 80's the pastor decided that he had received new revelation concerning the word of God, and proceeded to throw out all the portions of Scripture that reveal the wrath of God, eternal judgment, hell, etc. He felt justified because he stated that Christ died for all of mankind's sin, and was a God of love, and not judgment.

We discussed these issues at length with pastor, until finally with very heavy hearts we were compelled to leave. We saw the church dwindle from a thriving body with standing room only, to a small group that could barely keep the doors open. His theology also gravitated to an over-emphasis on deliverance ministry with everyone needing deliverance according to his formula. It was a very sad reality of a fractured ministry that had had such great potential for advancing Christ's Kingdom. The wreckage of confused souls who left the ministry can only be accounted in eternity, and yet we continue to pray for him and his family whom we still love.

Each of us who are called Christians need to spend daily time in the Word. It behooves us to study every book of the Old and New Testament with a journal and pen in hand in order to write down the many questions that will come up. We must then seek the counsel of mature godly men and women who will be able to answer our questions, in particular the pastor and leadership of the church we attend. This again is reason enough why we must be in relationship in a church body: so that we can grow in maturity and spiritual fruit, and be of service to the congregation as well as to the greater body of Christ.

There are several books of the New Testament Epistles that stand out to me continually, because of their daily significance in my walk with the



Chapter 5- A Sure Foundation

Lord. Two of them are **Ephesians** and **Hebrews**. Ephesians is a favorite because of its elevation of believers to the right hand of the throne of Heaven seated with Christ... right now! It gives us a heavenly perspective of our inheritance, for from that privileged position we are individually and corporately as a church able to overcome all the schemes and strategies of the adversary.

Part II of this book is titled ***The Elementary Principles of Christ***, although I felt it was necessary to begin Chapter 5 with the emphasis of the sure foundation of the reliability of the Holy Bible- in every book, every chapter, and every verse. As stated earlier, this Word is the Sword of the Spirit- which we are called to handle adeptly. So the question now is 'What are the Elementary Principles of Christ?' and where can the follower of the Way, the Truth, and the Life find them?

Before these principles are delineated in **Hebrews 6**, we find them alluded to at the end of the prior chapter:

**Hebrews 5:12-14 (NKJV)**... *For though by this time you ought to be teachers, you need someone to teach you again **the first principles** of the oracles of God; and you have come to need milk and not solid food. For everyone who partakes only of milk is unskilled in the word of righteousness, for he is a babe. But solid food belongs to those who are of full age, that is, those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil.*

The book of **Hebrews** is one of my favorite in the New Testament because of the panorama of God's redemptive process that it systematically lays down. The New Covenant in Christ is superior to the Old in every way: it is a better covenant with better promises, with a more excellent ministry, a better once-for-all sacrifice with the better blood of Christ, and the building of the better Tabernacle with each of us as members of His Eternal Body. In the sequel to this book, ***Cleansing the Temple***, we will unpack and carefully study the many treasures of both Hebrews and Ephesians. What we see in this portion quoted, which continues in Chapter 6 is the urgent need for maturity in the believer.

**Hebrews 6:1-3;11,12**... *Therefore, leaving the discussion of the **elementary principles of Christ**, let us go on to **perfection**, not laying again **the foundation** of repentance from dead works and of **faith toward God**, of **the doctrine of baptisms**, of **laying on of hands**, of **resurrection of the dead**, and of **eternal judgment**. And this we will do if God permits... And we desire that each one of you show the same diligence to the full assurance of hope until the end, that you do not become sluggish, but imitate those who through faith and patience inherit the promises.*

We therefore see seven principles described which the author (I believe it is Paul), kind of tongue-in-cheek states that they should be able to move beyond, pressing forward to maturity. In our case we are going to park there for a while and study these foundational (elementary) principles of Christ. How can we build on a sure foundation without a clear understanding of what the Word itself declares are basic, elementary, and foundational to our structure of understanding, and critical in going on to maturity?

## ***Chapter 6- The Foundational Principle of Repentance from Dead Works***

As the writer of Hebrews carefully teaches about the better covenant that we have in Christ Jesus, at the end of Chapter 5 he lays out a gentle rebuke. He tells the readers that though by now those who have handled the word of truth should be teachers, we must be retaught the rudimentary or basic teaching of the oracles of God. He anticipates the natural growth of the believer to come to full age, having our senses exercised to discern both good and evil. Here 'senses' imply powers of perception that depend not only on our mental capability, but also on our spiritual apprehension.

Although this discrimination between good and evil in context, is referring to the superiority of Christ's new covenant in contrast to the inferiority of the old covenant, it also shows God's correct economy in discerning between good and evil in general. This rejects the corrupted and perverting fruit of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, and shows how the tree of life, who is Christ himself by his Spirit, bears fruit in our lives manifesting true discernment.

The world is plagued with the reasonings and philosophies of men, attempting by human wisdom to understand this life: who we are, why we're here, and where all this is going. The pendulum swings from the Epicurean philosophy of "eat, drink, and be merry" which eventually leads to total depravity (if it feels good, do it!), to the opposite extreme of asceticism which rejects all pleasure and strips life of its eternal value. God's Holy Word is our book of instruction, imparting to us a clear understanding of our reason for existence. God's love for us and His provision for our full restoration are clearly laid out line upon line, precept upon precept.

The elementary principles which are foundational to the Christian faith are not understood by many Christians. We must all rise to the level of understanding in unity that would allow the body of Christ to grow to the required full stature of our Lord. We must therefore go back to the basics. The consummate coach Vince Lombardi once said to his Green Bay Packers after a stunning defeat- "This is a football". He then proceeded to rehearse for his gridiron warriors the foundational principles of the game of football. This leadership and dedication led them to yet another Super Bowl championship. We all need to revisit the basics from time to time, in

order to have a clear understanding of each of these principles, so as to build on this foundation and make steady progress in spiritual growth. **Unto full stature** is the ultimate goal.

In Hebrews chapter 6 we find seven items listed, though one is veiled.

**Hebrews 6:1-3 (KJV)**... *Therefore, leaving the discussion of the elementary principles of Christ, let us go on to perfection, not laying again the foundation of repentance from dead works and of faith toward God, of the doctrine of baptisms, of laying on of hands, of resurrection of the dead, and of eternal judgment. This we will do if God permits.*

Therefore the rudimentary principles that constitute the foundations of Christian doctrine are:

- 1) Repentance from dead works
- 2) Faith toward (in) God
- 3) Doctrine (teaching) of baptisms
- 4) The laying on of hands
- 5) Resurrection of the dead
- 6) Eternal judgment
- 7) Ultimate perfection (the veiled one- *Let us go on to perfection*).

The first six form three pairs, each of which we will study individually as well as in contrast to the other in the set of pairs.

### **Repentance from Dead Works**

Each of us in our most sincere moments recognizes a large void in our lives that only God can fill. Before we come to Christ, we struggle with the profound questions of all humanity: why was I born? Is there a God? What does my future hold? Once we awaken as little children to the reality of this so-called Brave New World, which is a modern rehash of the scary old world (Nimrod and ancient Babylon... see **Genesis 10**)- we are subject to fear, worry, and in too many worst cases inertia that leads to despair. In our modern society, it feels like we're daily dodging bullets. Where is God in all this, we ask?

In my personal experience raised in a Catholic home, I rejected the organized Roman church's legalistic mandate. Everything was a list of dos and don'ts from a very negative perspective. At that time I did not find grace, God's love, or a clear unfolding of the beauty of scriptural truth. Besides all that, my public school education contradicted what little I was being taught concerning faith. By the time I was 12 years old I had been bombarded with the theory of evolution numerous times. I was compelled to make a decision in favor of rational thinking, and against what was

*Chapter 6- Repentance from Dead Works*

viewed as the mythical hogwash of the Bible. In the early 1960s there was already a cynical disdain for traditional values, and the naiveté of biblical faith. How could I or anyone reconcile the story of creation with the theory of evolution? The do's and don'ts of church doctrine did not fit well with the worldview of the counterculture rebellion ushered in by sex, drugs and rock 'n roll.

But where would I go to find God if he or she or it really existed? With a full scholarship to UCLA in 1968, I hit the ground running... when I was able to leave home and live on campus. I studied psychology, comparative religion, and philosophy. This was all during the era of 'flower power' and anti-Vietnam War fervor. After heavy doses of Nietzsche, Camus, Sartre, Kierkegaard, Jung, Freud, Skinner, Erikson, William James, Robert Ardrey, and a psychedelic pilgrimage through Carlos Castaneda, Timothy Leary, the Beatles, and the Grateful Dead-- I thought I had surely touched the divine in Zen Buddhism.

The many writings of a former Jesuit priest named Alan Watts led me to accept for an extended season the false reality of so-called Eastern wisdom. I devoured his teaching in such books as *Psychotherapy East and West*; *Nature, Man, and Woman*; *the Way of Zen*, and many others. I became an adept using *The I Ching or Book of Changes*- which is a source of divination, and I now know that all such practices are condemned by God in the Holy Bible.

My love of drug-induced altered states led to serious addiction and borderline despair. Eventually I became suicidal, because everything seemed so futile. I had studied Hinduism (Krishna consciousness), Sufi mysticism, astrology, Tarot, ESP, UFO phenomena, and other paranormal studies. I had delved into Scientology, the teachings of shamanism taught by Carlos Castaneda- in his teachings of Don Juan series of books, and sundry other New Age philosophies. To my utter shock I was still spiritually and emotionally bankrupt. Even after all of that deep study of comparative religion, psychology, and philosophy- I had no peace-no joy-no hope-no purpose-no apparent destiny, and I was seriously bummed out. Until I met the Lord I was one confused puppy. In every single religion, philosophy, or alternative worldview, I chased a rabbit trail to a dead end. Each and every one of these lead to an honest awareness of its serious error and apparent contradictions. I would not accept nonsense; I could not accept or even stomach apparent contradictions.

It became necessary for me to abandon each of what initially seemed a hopeful avenue of finding peace, because unwittingly I was looking for absolute truth. God had embedded in my DNA an unrelenting desire to really know the truth. At a time where 'truth' was whatever one said it

was, I was not satisfied with some ephemeral or mystical substitute that would not endure careful scrutiny.

The Lord chose to reveal Himself to me, in answer to a little Puerto Rican Catholic praying mother-who would not let go of God in interceding for her son. Like Hannah in the Bible, her daily prayers and tears came before God-even though for a good number of years I was hanging by one foot over the chasm that is hell. God's ways are higher than our ways, and He works mysteriously. Suffice it to say that I challenged God as an unbeliever for someone to love, and someone to love me. Little did I realize at that time that the Father had provided Jesus as the answer to my prayer 2000 years ago. Yet in my broken and despairing state, He brought a beautiful 18 year old Irish lass into my life. Four months after we met, she became my wife... and we recently celebrated our 35th anniversary.

My wife Robyn and I were drawn by God's Holy Spirit to the knowledge of the truth by way of Christian television ministry, and more specifically in the sincere study of the Holy Scriptures. We both gave our hearts to Jesus in 1976 and the rest is history (His Story). It would be disingenuous for me to not state that I struggled for many years even after coming to know the ultimate truth. My addictive behavior and the demonic activity that had become a part of my life as a direct result of delving into the occult required more radical intervention. It took years of counseling, deliverance ministry, and accountable relationships-with much prayer and fasting that allowed a deeper work of cleansing, healing, and ultimate deliverance to manifest in my life.

**Dead Works** are therefore any substitute to God that we worship. This includes all false religions since the Lord Jesus clearly said:

*John 14:6... I am the Way, the Truth, and the Life. No one comes to the Father but by me.*

The Triune God is not confused. Since Jesus is the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world (**Rev. 13:8**), **there is no plan B**. There truly is not nor has there ever been any other name in heaven or earth by which we can be saved (my paraphrase of **Acts 4:12**). For me and every other human that draws breath, there must be a turning away from every idol, from anything that is primary in our lives, because whatever it is-it has assumed a place that only belongs to God. That void in our hearts as a sage has said- is a God shaped void. satan's scheme since the Garden has been to present a substitute, a 'shell game' to con us into accepting and thereby receiving a lie... any of these lies will do.

*Chapter 6- Repentance from Dead Works*

These dead works bear the stench of death in the spirit realm. The holy angels of God ponder mankind's willful rejection of truth; it is staggering to their uncorrupted minds and hearts. The vast majority of mankind has received the lie, thereby becoming children of satan. And when they exit this life, they are doomed to eternal separation from God. It is our God-given mandate to rescue as many of these misguided souls as we can, and bring them to the saving knowledge of the truth revealed in the sublime person of the Lord Jesus Christ.

The corollary to repentance from dead works- or turning away from false deceptions is a genuine turning toward and faith in the true and living God. We will look carefully in the next chapter at the power of this foundational principle.





## **Chapter 7- The Foundational Principle of Faith toward God**

When the Holy Spirit imparts truth to our hearts, there is a supernatural moment or series of encounters, where our stony hearts are tenderized to receive the truth.

**Jeremiah 24:7...** *And I will give them a heart to know Me, that I am Jehovah; and they will be my people, and I will be their God; for they will return to me with their whole heart.*

**Ezekiel 11:19-20...** *And I will give them one heart, and a new spirit I will put within them; and I will take the heart of stone out of their flesh and give them a heart of flesh, that they may walk in My statutes and keep My ordinances and do them; and they will be My people, and I will be their God.*

As Jesus declared so poignantly in the parable of the sower and the seed (**Matthew 13:1-23**), the Word of truth as the seed is continually sown into men's hearts. This word of truth is seed for the Kingdom with the Lord being its source of life. We will study the Kingdom in its initiation, formation, and expansion in later chapters in this volume.

Sadly most of the seed sown is wasted. The birds typifying satan's legions snatch the seed that falls by the wayside- which represents a hardened heart. Three of the four soils described are unproductive for a variety of reasons. The good soil signifies a heart that is not hardened by worldly traffic, that is without hidden sin, without the anxiety of this age with its cares and deceitfulness of riches. Wealth is not the issue, for we know that it is God who gives us the power to get wealth.

**Deuteronomy 8:18...** *And you shall remember Jehovah your God, for it is He who gives you strength [power] to gain wealth, **so that He may establish His covenant...***

The foundational principle of **Faith toward God** requires a continually open heart, a heart open to the revelation of the word of truth. In order to understand this type of faith and its deeper implications, we need to be saturated in the Word, the Holy Scriptures- for we read:

**Romans 10:17 NKJV...** *So then faith comes by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.*

From the time when each of us first begins to ponder the meaning of life, we struggle to fill the void in our hearts that is so relentlessly there. If we attempt to fill it with, as we saw earlier, with the dead works of false religion, human philosophy, science or even literature apart from God, we remain dissatisfied. This dissatisfaction cannot be filled with recreation or physical achievement, though many attempt to. Climbing Mt. Everest, running a marathon, or being a triathlete are physically rewarding accomplishments of discipline and training. And yet we do not come an inch closer to a relationship with God by way of these disciplines.

Others seek to accomplish great things in the realm of business, finance, education, the arts, politics, philanthropy, or any other worthy human endeavor. But none of this will ever merit relationship with our Creator. There is no inherent worthiness on our parts to qualify either you or me to stand before a Holy God. The only avenue, method, or means has been provided in the infinite wisdom of God by Himself alone.

**Ephesians 2:8,9...** *For by grace you have been saved through faith, and this not of yourselves; it is the gift of God; not of works that no one should boast.*

When I was a pagan New Age practitioner I did not want to hear about sin, hell, judgment, a bloody cross, a Holy God, or any other spiritual reality. I found it all offensive because in my arrogant pride I postulated that God if He existed at all must accept His creation as is, warts and all. If He made us, then He must accept us and therefore if Heaven exists we would all go there. Now after over thirty years of relationship with God through the finished work of Christ on the cross, and also having studied the entire Bible from beginning to end many, many times I see how **Faith toward God** is strengthened daily in the word and prayer.

Every child of God needs to daily seek the Lord in the word and prayer. We've seen how He declares that if we seek Him, we will find Him if we search for Him with our whole heart (**Deuteronomy 4:29**). There is the constant dissonance of the smooth lies of the enemy that pervade our society through media. We see the Dali Lama who accepts worship as a god, and yet he needs glasses to read. Many of us- including myself in the past, have felt that there must be tolerance and acceptance of others' ways of interpreting God and how we can approach Him. The often touted phrase 'many ways to God' rings true in the natural, but is damning and false in the reality of the Spirit. We are to sincerely express the loving heart of God without tolerating falsehood or giving up the ground of truth- and how God has chosen to reveal Himself in the Holy Scriptures.

God has provided only one avenue to Himself- and that is through Christ who said Himself:

Chapter 7- Faith toward God

**John 14:6...** *Jesus said to him, I am the way, and the reality [the truth] and the life; no one comes to the Father except through Me.*

Very exclusive; not inclusive at all... not tolerant toward other ways 'up the mountain' to God. **This is 'Faith toward God'**. This is the ultimate reality of how we enter into relationship with a Holy God who does love all of mankind, and because of His unfathomable love gave the greatest sacrificial gift to redeem a fallen humanity back to Himself... He gave His only Son, the Lord Jesus Christ, as a sacrifice for our sin. Again:

**2 Corinthians 5:21...** *For He [the Father] made Him [Jesus] who knew no sin to be sin for us, that we might become the righteousness of God in Him.*

The foundational principle of faith toward God requires one to come to the understanding of the reality of what the Bible reveals. Our human history is a testimony of fallen man's wayward meanderings mostly without God. It also shines a continual light on the people of God who through faith and patience impacted history and released the power of God through prayer and action, in line with God's character, purpose, and revealed Will.

God's providential care toward humanity can be clearly seen in our history. Whether in the biblical account of His grace, deliverance, and blessing of the children of Israel on numerous occasions (when they repented of their sins and returned to God), or in the many ways His providence is seen in direct answer to the prayers of His blood-bought sons and daughters- an open heart and a sensitive eye will see it. Many good examples are found in our country's founding fathers, and in particular in the life of George Washington. He was a prolific writer who in many volumes journaled his prayerful experiences with God.

Our young country would not have made it through the revolutionary war, had it not been for divine intervention which had been engendered through the arena of prayer. Peter Marshall's wonderful book ***The Light and the Glory*** is a revealing detailed history of God's manifest care and faithfulness toward us as a nation. The United States of America has yet a destiny to fulfill in God's economy, and once we begin to experience the coming endtime Awakening, we will actively participate in the greatest harvest of souls that mankind has every seen.

There are many books written which show God's hand of provision and grace toward us. One that is a Christian classic is ***Shaping History through Prayer and Fasting*** by the late scholar Derek Prince. I highly recommend any and all of our dear brother Prince's writings. There is a tangible anointing and presence of God that will be experienced in studying his literature, which will encourage our faith substantially. In the same vein, two enlightening books by Arthur Wallis are worthy of serious

study: **God's Chosen Fast** and **In the Day of Thy Power**. The first is most helpful in conveying the reality of the power of **prayer with fasting**, and the second is a historical panorama of God's grace in revivals since the first century church. Our God is faithful to respond, as He says:

**Jeremiah 33:3...** *Call on Me and I will answer you and show you great and mighty things that you do not know.*

A growing and deepening **faith toward God** is a beautiful and precious ongoing experience. We find strong encouragement in the Scriptures when we realize that God has imparted to us a measure of faith. We read:

**Romans 12:3...** *For I say, through the grace given to me, to everyone who is among you, not to think more highly of himself than he ought to think, but to **think so as to be sober-minded**, as God has apportioned to each **a measure of faith**.*

When we come to realize the existence of a Holy, Omnipotent, Omniscient, and Omnipresent God... and the startling reality of His love for each of us individually, we are overwhelmed with gratitude and begin to love and worship Him in spirit and in truth. A personal relationship with this Glorious Being is predicated on **faith toward God**.

**Hebrews 11:6...** *But **without faith it is impossible to be well pleasing to Him**, for he who comes forward to God **must believe that He is**, and that He is a rewarder of those who diligently seek Him.*

**Hebrews 11 (entire)** is often called the Hall of Faith of the Old Testament saints, because of its concise yet poignant chronicle of men and women of God...

**Hebrews 11:33-12:2...** *Who through faith overcame kingdoms, worked righteousness, obtained promises, stopped the mouths of lions, Quenched the power of fire, escaped the edge of the sword, were made strong in weakness, became mighty in war, routed the armies of foreigners.*

*Women received their dead by resurrection; and others were tortured to death, not accepting deliverance, in order that they might obtain a better resurrection. And still others underwent the trial of mockings and scourgings, even, moreover, of bonds and imprisonment.*

*They were stoned, they were sawn in two, they were tempted, they died by the murder of the sword, they wandered about in sheepskins, in goatskins, destitute, afflicted, ill-treated (**Of whom the world was not worthy**), wandering over deserts and mountains and in caves and holes of the earth.*

Chapter 7- Faith toward God

*And these all, **having obtained a good testimony through their faith, did not obtain the promise, Because God has provided something better for us, so that apart from us they would not be made perfect.***

**Hebrews 12:1,2...** *Therefore, let us also, **having so great a cloud of witnesses surrounding us,** put away every encumbrance and the sin which so easily entangles us and run with endurance the race which is set before us, **looking away unto Jesus, the Author and Perfector of our faith,** who for the joy set before Him endured the cross, despising the shame, and has sat down on the right hand of the throne of God.*

The Christian life truly is a race. All we who are saved Christians must run the race to win the prize (**1 Corinthians 9:24**), which is not salvation since that is secured in genuine repentance, confession, and crying out to God... but this prize is the reward of ultimate perfection in the future resurrection. We will look closely at both of these elementary principles (ultimate perfection and resurrection from the dead) in later chapters.

We are daily to '*fight the good fight of faith*' (**1 Timothy 6:12**) because so much of the world around us contradicts and rejects our pure **faith toward God**. How do we gain the victory over circumstances daily?

**1 John 5:4...** *For everything that has been begotten of God overcomes the world; and this is the victory which overcomes the world- our faith.*

Whoever truly believes that Jesus is the Christ, God incarnate- has been **begotten** of God and is a child of God. As children of God regenerate believers have organic union with the Trinity, and therefore have the capability of the divine life to overcome the powerful satanic world system. Our **faith toward God** requires daily exercise as James, the half-brother of Jesus wrote:

**James 1:2-4...** *Count it all joy, my brothers, whenever you fall into various trials, knowing that the proving of your **faith** works out endurance, and let endurance have its perfect work that you may be perfect and entire, lacking in nothing.*

**2:17-22...** *So also **faith, if it does not have works, is dead** in itself. But someone will say, You have faith, and I have works; show me your faith without works, and I will show you my faith by my works. You believe that God is one. You do well; the demons also believe and shudder. **But are you willing to know, O vain man, that faith without its works is useless?***

These verses confirmed by so many others attest to the fact that **faith toward God** must be an active faith; a daily exercise of our standing in God that overcomes the world by tangible demonstrations of a life infused with the divine Holy Spirit empowered to do exploits on God's behalf and

for His Kingdom. Keeping it in the family- Jude, the Lord Jesus' other half-brother in his single chapter said:

**Jude 3;20, 21...** *Beloved, while using all diligence to write to you concerning our common salvation, I found it necessary to write to you and exhort you **to earnestly contend for the faith once for all delivered to the saints...** But you beloved, **building yourselves upon your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Spirit, Keep yourselves in the love of God,** awaiting the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ unto eternal life.*

We have been privileged with the knowledge of the ultimate truth, of the reality of God's economy revealed in the Holy Bible. This exclusive representation of the mind and heart of God in His dealing with mankind eliminates all other contenders. It affirms and confirms on every page that we must:

**Matthew 7:13,14...** *Enter in through the narrow gate, for wide is the gate and broad is the way that leads to destruction, and many are those who enter through it. Because narrow is the gate and constricted is the way that leads to life, and few are those who find it.*

Our faith has many aspects: it is a fruit of the Spirit (**Galatians 5:22**), a gift of the Spirit (**1 Corinthians 12:9**), and an integral part of our armor (**Ephesians 6:16**). As we recall- fruit is grown, gifts are manifested, and a shield of faith is part of our complete armor in Christ is to be worn in daily combat. These are more than just metaphors; they are the divine realities of our daily walk of faith... that is **Faith toward God**.

**Romans 1:18...** *For the righteousness of God is revealed in it- **out of faith to faith,** as it is written, **but the righteous shall have life and live by faith.***

## **Chapter 8-The Foundational Principle of the Doctrine of Baptisms**

**Ephesians 4:1-6...** *I beseech you therefore, I, the prisoner in the Lord, to **walk worthily of the calling with which you were called**, With all lowliness and meekness, with long-suffering, bearing one another in love, Being diligent to keep the oneness [unity] of the Spirit in the uniting bond of peace; One Body and one Spirit, even as also you were called, in one hope of your calling: One Lord, one faith, **one baptism**; One God and Father of all, who is over all and through all and in all.*

We begin this chapter on the **doctrine of baptisms** with a bit of a conundrum. This portion of scripture has been used by many in the cessationist camp to imply more than it states. This group of believers and even denominations believe that the power gifts of the Spirit (known as **gifts of healings, gifts of faith, and the working of miracles**), as well as the revelatory gifts (**word of knowledge, word of wisdom, and discerning of spirits**), and in particular the utterance gifts (**tongues, interpretation, and prophecy**) have 'ceased' when the canon of scripture was sealed. They quote this verse among others out of context, in this case stressing the emphasis on **one baptism**. What is truly being declared is the **baptism into Christ**. Through faith in the Lord we are baptized into Him; water baptism being the physical ceremony of the spiritual reality. We are transferred out of Adam into Christ, and are joined to the Lord as His Body. This is the **one baptism** being alluded to.

**Romans 6:3-5...** *Or are you ignorant that all of us who have been **baptized into Christ Jesus** have been baptized into His death? We have been buried therefore with Him through baptism into His death, in order that just as Christ was raised from the dead through the glory of the Father, so also we might walk in newness of life. For if we have grown together with Him in the likeness of His death, indeed we will also be in the likeness of His resurrection.*

Our old man was crucified with Christ and buried with Him through baptism into His death. After baptism we are changed into a new person in resurrection. Resurrection is not just a future state; it is a present and continual process. We will look at this more closely in the study of the doctrine of resurrection in a later chapter. This same misguided cessationist group erroneously misapplies the verses in:

**1 Corinthians 13:9,10...***For we know in part, and we prophesy in part; But when that which is complete [perfect] comes, that which is in part will be rendered useless.*

This line of reasoning has chosen the completion of the Holy Bible as that which is complete or perfect, when the text is dealing with the full recovery of planet earth, the full restoration of a fallen world and in particular the human race.

The Love chapter, from which these two verses are quoted, deals with the awesome truth that **Love** survives everything and will hold its place forever. It will never fail, it will never be phased out or have an end. It is clearly like the eternal life of God. The gifts of the Spirit whether prophecy, tongues, words of knowledge and wisdom, etc. are dispensational only in the fact that they are for the Church age... **the entire Church age**. In the millennium reign of Christ and in eternity future they will not be needed since we will have the Lord Jesus ever present.

All of the gifts of the Spirit are critical for the current age we are living in. That is why the greatest explosion of church growth has been in the so called Charismatic/Pentecostal camp for the past hundred years. The churches and denominations that have left the Holy Spirit outside the door are shriveling up and passing away. The ministries that have affirmed the present day ministry of the Holy Spirit, and give room for His full manifestation are growing in leaps and bounds.

I felt strongly compelled to deal with that before delving into the **doctrine of baptisms**. So then what does "doctrine or teaching of baptisms" in **Hebrews 6** mean? I'll take two perspectives with overlapping natural and spiritual layers of meaning. The word 'baptisms' in Greek is the same word translated washings in **Hebrews 9:10** and dipping in **Mark 7:4** which both refer to the washing of vessels used for God's service in the temple. This included the washing of the priests described in **Exodus 30** and **Leviticus 16**. Both in the Old and New Testaments the principle is the same: it represents the washing away and termination of negative things.

These aspects of baptisms would be understandable to the Hebrew believers to whom this letter was written. The washing away and terminating of negative things is beautifully understood in water baptism. Its greater type and prophetic layer in the act of submersion under water is death, burial, and resurrection which is our eternal identification with Christ: crucified with Him unto death, buried with Him in the tomb (submerged), and risen with in Him in resurrection, typified by coming out of the water.

So we see that the two cardinal principles of this spiritual reality relate to being baptized into Christ in the new birth and positioned into His Body, and the ceremony of water baptism which is an act of obedience that



## Chapter 8- The Doctrine of Baptisms

confirms and testifies of our participation in Christ's death, burial, and resurrection.

A more comprehensive understanding of the doctrine of baptisms necessitates that we look at other important historical instances of different types of baptisms and what insights they provide for our growth in Christ.

### Baptism unto Moses

**1 Corinthians 10:1-4...** *For I do not want you to be ignorant, brothers, that all our fathers were under the cloud, and all passed through the sea; And all were baptized unto Moses in the cloud and in the sea; And all ate the same spiritual food, And all drank the same spiritual drink; for they drank of a spiritual rock which followed them, and the rock was Christ.*

The cloud that covered the children of Israel typifies the Holy Spirit of God, which we New Testament believers are privileged to have continually with us and in us. What preceded this portion of scripture in **1 Corinthians 9** dealt with the race that each of us runs daily in our Christian lives. The children of Israel were baptized into Moses to begin the holy race from Egypt and its bondage to the world and death, to the Promised Land for the fulfilling of God's purposes. This is for our example in being a parallel of the believers' baptism into Christ that our Father God may have His Kingdom revealed and expressed in the church.

### The Baptism of John

**Matthew 3:1-6...** *Now in those days John the Baptist appeared, preaching in the wilderness of Judea And saying, Repent, for the Kingdom of Heaven has drawn near. For this is he who was spoken through Isaiah the prophet, saying, "A voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare the way of the Lord; make straight His paths." ... At that time Jerusalem and all Judea and all the surrounding regions of the Jordan went out to him, and they were baptized by him in the Jordan River as they confessed their sins.*

The Old Testament dispensation of the law was ended by the coming of John the Baptist. After the baptism by John, the preaching of the gospel of peace and the dispensation of grace began.

**Acts 10:36-38...** *The word which He sent to the sons of Israel in announcing **the gospel of peace** through Jesus Christ (this One is Lord of all) You yourselves know, the word which has been spoken throughout the whole of Judea, beginning from Galilee **after the baptism which John***

**proclaimed:** *Jesus, the One from Nazareth, how God anointed Him with the Holy Spirit and with power, who went about doing good and healing all those who were being oppressed by the devil, for God was with Him.*

The preaching of John the Baptist was a critical transition because it was the initiation of God's New Testament economy. He was not in the temple declaring repentance and the drawing near of God's Kingdom, but was instead out in the wilderness. He was a man of the wild, not worshipping God according to the old scriptural ordinances and not keeping any old regulations. This was a clear introduction of the new way of God's New Testament economy contrary to religion, which involves turning to or focusing on His Kingdom. Nothing old would be left the same because something new was going to be built. This requires the initial act of repentance- change of mind and heart, change of direction, and turning toward God and His Kingdom... which is what this book in your hands is all about.

Isaiah's prophecy indicates that John's introducing of the New Testament economy was planned and foretold by God and was not accidental. It clearly implies an absolutely new beginning. To repent unto the Lord with all our being, with our whole heart allowing Him to come in is how we prepare the way of the Lord.

John was radical in every respect (**Matthew 3:4**). He was born a priest (**Luke 1:5-17... to prepare for the Lord a people made ready.**) According to the law he should have worn the linen priestly garments and should have eaten the priestly food of sacrifices offered to God (**Leviticus 6:10, 15-18, 25-26; Ezekiel 44:17-18**). He instead wore a coat of camel's hair which was a serious offense to the religious order of the day, because the camel is considered unclean according to Levitical regulations (**Lev.11:4**). He lived out in the wilderness, ate locust and wild honey, and was uncivilized and uncultured according to their traditions. This signaled the abandonment of the religious order which had degenerated mixed with human culture, and pointed the way to faith focused whole-heartedly on Christ and the Spirit of life.

As we have seen- to baptize people is to immerse them completely in water, to bury them signifying death. To be raised from the water means to be resurrected from death. The old person has been terminated so that a new beginning can be realized in resurrection to be brought in by Christ as the Life-giver. John baptized in the Jordan River. The Jordan River was the waters in which twelve stones- representing the twelve tribes of Israel were buried and from which another twelve stones, again representing the twelve tribes, were brought up or resurrected (**Joshua 4:1-18**). Therefore John's baptism in the Jordan River implied the burial of their old being and the resurrection of the new man. The children of Israel's

## Chapter 8- The Doctrine of Baptisms

crossing of the Jordan River brought them into the Promised Land. Likewise baptism brings people into Christ, who is the reality of the Land of Promise. John's preaching of repentance and the nearness of God's Kingdom, ushered in when Jesus appeared- indicated that the Kingdom of Heaven that he preached is constituted not of the children of Abraham by birth but rather by faith (v9) ... it is a heavenly Kingdom, not earthly... yet.

### Baptism of Jesus Christ by John

**Matthew 3:13-17...** *Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan to John to be baptized by him. But John tried to prevent Him, saying It is I who have need of being baptized by You, and You come to me? But Jesus answered and said to him, Permit it for now, for it is fitting for us in this way to fulfill all righteousness. Then he permitted Him. And having been baptized, Jesus went up immediately from the water, and behold, the heavens were opened to Him, and He saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and coming upon Him. And behold, a voice out of the heavens, saying, This is My Son, the Beloved, in whom I have found My delight.*

I have wondered long why Jesus 'needed' to be baptized. **The Son of man** came to John **as a man** to be baptized according to God's New Testament economy. This critical event is recorded in three of the four Gospels, with only John's not giving record of the Lord's baptism, because John testified that **the Lord Jesus is God**.

Righteousness can be defined as to be in right standing with God by living, walking, and doing all things in the way that God has ordained. In the Old Testament economy, to be considered righteous was to try to keep the law fully- covered temporarily by the atoning sacrifices of animals since no one could keep the law perfectly. To inaugurate the New Testament God sent John the Baptist to institute water baptism. To be baptized is to fulfill righteousness before God, by fulfilling the requirement of God. Jesus came to John not as God but as typical man. In keeping this dispensational practice of God He as a man would be right with God and therefore likewise had to be baptized.

Jesus was baptized not only to fulfill all righteousness, but as a type also to allow Himself to be put into symbolic death and resurrection- that He might minister not in a way that was natural, but in the way of resurrection, pointing to the atonement. By being baptized He was able to minister in resurrection power even before His actual death and resurrection three and a half years later. This obedient act brought Him three things: the open heavens, the Spirit of God descending as a dove, and the Father's affirming expression of love and satisfaction. It is the

same for each new believer who is baptized. We immediately have greater access in prayer to an open heaven, the Holy Spirit comes upon us in greater measure without (since He is already in residence within at the new birth), and we are assured of our Heavenly Father's pleasure in our obedience in fulfilling what He has ordained.

We know that the Lord Jesus had the Spirit within Him from His birth since He was born of the Holy Spirit (**Luke 1:35**). Now for His ministry the Spirit of God descended upon Him. This was accomplished to anoint the new King, and present Him to the people.

**John 1:29-34... Behold, the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world!** *This is He of whom I said, A man is coming after me who has become ahead of me, because He was before me. And I did not know Him, but in order that He might be manifested to Israel, for this reason I came baptizing in water. And John testified, saying, I beheld the Spirit descending as a dove out of heaven, and He abode upon Him. And I did not know Him, but He who sent me to baptize in water, He said to me, He upon whom you see the Spirit descending and abiding upon Him, this is He who baptizes in the Holy Spirit. And I have seen and have testified that this is the Son of God.*

Like the Spirit descending as a dove upon Him, Jesus ministered in gentleness and singleness in sight and purpose, focusing solely on the will of the Father- and not His own. The Son rose up from the waters of the Jordan, the Holy Spirit descended upon the Son as a dove, and the Father spoke His affirmation. This is the ultimate proof of the Trinity of God demonstrating that the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit exist simultaneously. ***This is He who baptizes in the Holy Spirit.***

### **The Baptism in the Holy Spirit and the Baptism in Fire**

**Matthew 3:11...** (John the Baptist speaking) *I baptize you in water unto repentance, but He who is coming after me is stronger than I, whose sandals I am not worthy to carry. He Himself will baptize you in the Holy Spirit and fire...*

Looking closely at the context of this particular verse and what preceded it, we must make a clear distinction between the two baptisms mentioned. The second which is fire is not the cleansing fire as in **Acts 2:3**, which is related to the Holy Spirit... but is the same fire as in the preceding and the following verses:

**v10...** *And already the axe is laid at the root of the trees. Every tree therefore that does not produce good fruit is cut down and cast into the fire. v12...* *Whose winnowing fan is in His hand. And He will thoroughly*

Chapter 8- The Doctrine of Baptisms

*cleanse His threshing floor and will gather His wheat into the barns, but the chaff He will burn up with **unquenchable fire**.*

These verses deal with unbelievers (like the Pharisees and the Sadducees) who if they do not genuinely repent and believe in the Lord will suffer eternal perdition. These verses therefore are contrasting parallels: Those who repent and believe will be baptized in the Holy Spirit that they might have eternal life. Otherwise they will be headed for perdition where the Lord will baptize them in fire, putting them into the lake of fire for eternal punishment. We will look at this much more closely in the chapter concerning the foundational principle of **eternal judgment**.

The baptism in the Holy Spirit by the Lord Jesus Christ with His cleansing fire initiated the kingdom of Heaven touching earth and individual believers on the day of Pentecost and will carry the Kingdom to its full manifestation and consummation at the end of this age. I want to now therefore deal with a most controversial subject in the greater Body of Christ, which is the **baptism in the Holy Spirit**. First I must reiterate that when any person is **genuinely** born again, he or she is baptized into Christ by the Holy Spirit and receives the indwelling presence of the Holy Spirit forever... never to be separated. This is an eternal reality which should give us confidence in our relationship with God, as well as a sober responsibility of not grieving the Holy Spirit.

As I mentioned earlier cessationist theology claims that the manifestation of gifts of the Spirit ceased with the death of the Apostles or the completion of Scripture. But the Apostle Paul did not believe nor teach that. Nor is that taught anywhere in the entire New Testament. On the contrary, in the introduction to the Corinthian letters Paul exhorted believers:

**1 Corinthians 1:4-8**... *I thank my God always concerning you based upon the grace of God which was given to you in Christ Jesus, That in everything you were enriched in Him, in **all utterance** and **all knowledge**, Even at the testimony of Christ was confirmed in you, So that **you do not lack in any gift**, eagerly awaiting the revelation of our Lord Jesus Christ, Who will also confirm you until the end unreprouvable in the day of Lord Jesus Christ.*

In this brief statement, Paul equates the duration of spiritual gifts to be the same length of time as the Church's waiting anticipation for the Lord's return. There is probably no greater ignorance in the Church today than of spiritual gifts and the Lord Jesus' offer of **the Baptism in the Holy Spirit**. One may ask why do I need the baptism in the Holy Spirit and the impartation of spiritual gifts? Jesus revealed in:

**Acts 1:4,5,8...** *And as He met together with them, He charged them not to depart from Jerusalem, but to wait for **the promise of the Father**, which He said, You heard from Me; For John baptized with water, but you shall be **baptized in the Holy Spirit** not many days from now...*

There has been and continues to be great controversy in the body of Christ concerning the reality of the Baptism in the Holy Spirit. Although I have personally experienced this precious reality, I must say that I have sat on both sides of this issue. I know by personal experience the precious value of this greater work of the Holy Spirit, although I fought it for a time early in my Christian walk holding to a more fundamental dispensational (cessationist) view. It is so true that new believers as well as those who do not have committed personal study of the Scriptures will only grow to the level of the pastoral leadership over them. You cannot impart something that you do not have, which is why entire movements in the church of Jesus Christ are missing the fullness of the abundant life promised by the Lord- denying, rejecting, and resisting the manifestation and work of the Holy Spirit in the individual believer.

I want to now carefully look at what the Scriptures, the inspired Word of God says about the Baptism in the Holy Spirit with particular scrutiny into the gift and manifestation of **tongues**. The Apostle Paul under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit gave the most comprehensive dissertation of the gifts of the Spirit in the 84 verses of 1 Corinthians chapter 12-14. He begins with:

**1 Corinthians 12:1,4-11...** *Now concerning spiritual gifts, brothers, I do not want you to be ignorant... But there are distinctions of gifts, but the same Spirit; And there are distinctions of ministries, yet the same Lord; And there are distinctions of operations, but the same God, who operates all things in all. **But to each one is given the manifestation of the Spirit for what is profitable.** For to one through the Spirit a **word of wisdom** is given, and to another a **word of knowledge**, according to the same Spirit; To a different one **faith** in the same Spirit, and to another **gifts of healing** in the one Spirit, And to another **operations of works of power**, and to another **prophecy**, and to another **discerning of spirits**; to a different one various kinds of **tongues**, and to another the **interpretation of tongues**. But the one and the same Spirit operates all these things, distributing to each one respectively as He purposes.*

All the different gifts are the manifestation of the Spirit, in that the Spirit is manifested in the believers who have received the gifts. Such manifestation of the Spirit in the congregational setting of a worship service or gathering is for the profit of the church, the Body of Christ. It is for the growth in life of the members of the Body of Christ and for the building up of His Body. **v13** is operative: *For also in one Spirit we were all baptized into one Body... and were given to drink one Spirit.* To be baptized in the Spirit is to get into the Spirit and to be lost in Him; to

drink of the Spirit is to take the Spirit in and have our being saturated with Him, mingled with the Spirit. We each need to continually call upon the Lord and draw the water of the Holy Spirit with joy for He is the fountain of living water (**John 4:10,14**).

Part of the confusion in the body of Christ concerning the matter of tongues, I believe has to do with the distinction that Paul makes between what is apparently the two directions of tongues. The first is from God downward to the congregation or gathering. This is a public message which requires interpretation.

**1 Corinthians 14:26-28...** *What then, brothers? Whenever you come together, each one has a psalm, has a teaching, has a revelation, has a **tongue**, has an **interpretation**. Let all things be done for building up. If **anyone speaks in a tongue**, it should be by two, or at the most three, and in turn, and **one should interpret**; But **if there is no interpreter, he should be silent in the church, and speak to himself and to God.***

The second direction of tongues is upward, from the people to God. This may be prayer, worship, or "singing in the Spirit" (**1 Corinthians 14:15**). Although of this message we are told to ask for the interpretation, we need to understand it may or may not be given (**1 Corinthians 14:13**). Every Spirit filled believer should expect this type of prayer to become an important part of his or her spiritual life, but you must seek it and receive it. The issue is that the Holy Spirit will not force Himself on anyone. Tongues is the only spiritual gift deliberately designed by the Lord to attack man's pride and ego. It attacks our human intellect and literally insults our intelligence. There are many that seek the gifts of healing, words of wisdom, faith, prophecy, etc., but refuse to endure the reproach of what in reality is a strange gift.

I believe that praying in tongues is our secret weapon- and as the only gift which personally edifies the believer, it can become the key that unlocks remarkable and flowing spiritual power. It does that by "building up" the one who is employing it in prayer. Tongues may well be the catalyst that activates (by the active agency of the Holy Spirit) the other gifts.

**1 Corinthians 14:1-6;12;18-19...** *Pursue love, and desire earnestly **spiritual gifts, but especially that you may prophesy**. For he who speaks in a **tongue does not speak to men but to God**; for no one hears, but **in his spirit he speaks mysteries**. But he who prophesies speaks building up and encouragement and consolation to men. **He who speaks in a tongue builds up himself, but he who prophesies builds up the church**. I desire **that you all speak in tongues, but especially that you would prophesy**; and greater is he who prophesies than he who speaks in tongues, unless he interprets, that the church may receive building up.*

*But now, brothers, if I come to you speaking in tongues, what will I profit you, unless I speak to you in revelation or in knowledge or in prophecy or in teaching?... So also you, since you are zealous [for spiritual gifts], seek that you may excel for the building up of the church. Therefore let him who speaks in a tongue pray that he may interpret.*

***I thank God, I speak in tongues more than all of you,** But in the church I would rather speak five words with my mind, that I might instruct others also, than ten thousand words in a tongue.*

Where does Paul speak so much in tongues if not in the congregation of believers? In exercising his prayer language of course... alone between himself and his God.

Scripture is our final and absolute authority. All conflicting opinions, no matter from what source or however long-standing, are only human speculation and must be rejected and thrown out. Paul's admonitions of earnestly and zealously desiring and seeking the spiritual gifts, especially for the edification of the Body of Christ reveal no reluctance that is common in the modern church's attitude against spiritual gifts. We need to humble ourselves before the Holy Spirit and give ourselves fully to Him, surrendering our pride. He will then impart to us His gifts, and give each of us a private prayer language that will build us up in our most holy faith.

By rejecting spiritual gifts, much of the Church today is trapped in sanitized religion and is missing the greater dimension of spirituality. The Bible is clear:

**2 Timothy 3:16,17...** *All Scripture is God-breathed and profitable for teaching, for conviction, for correction, for instruction in righteousness, That the man of God may be complete, fully equipped for every good work.*

How foolish and contradictory is it to say that when the canon of Scripture was sealed because now **the perfect** had come, that suddenly you can discard major portions of Scripture that instruct us on appropriating the power of the Holy Spirit and manifesting all of His spiritual gifts? That makes the "perfect" book not perfect at all. In fact, it was perfect until it was canonized and then it became imperfect.

Paul says in **1Corinthians 13:10,12...** *But when that which is complete [perfect] comes, that which is in part will be rendered useless... For now we see in a mirror obscurely, but at that time face to face; now I know in part, but at that time I will fully know even as also I was fully known.*

We still see obscurely and know only in part, so apparently that which is perfect 'ain't here just yet! The full manifestation of the King and His



*Chapter 8- The Doctrine of Baptisms*

Kingdom and our transformation at His coming is that which is perfect. If Scripture is trustworthy and it is, then we need to obey God and preach every part of it with equal confidence and enthusiasm. We cannot pick and choose our theology, and we surely cannot reject vital parts to get some form of human approval. The Church needs to repent of its bondage to a religious spirit which replaces truth with traditions of men making void the Word of God. There are many good people caught up in bad influences who unknowingly buy into wrong positions and feel compelled to defend them. This ploy is a tool of satan to prevent the saints from effective warfare against him.

Yes, let us all humble ourselves before our Mighty God, confess our shallowness and lack of in depth study of the truth revealed in the Holy Scriptures. We must accept all of His gifts as being valid and necessary today and tomorrow for the advancing of His Kingdom as we build up the Body of Christ. We need to guard our humility, fight pride, maintain integrity and truth at all costs, live in the reverential fear of the Lord, and allow the Holy Spirit's gifts and fruit to flow continually and in increasing intensity from each of us. **Pursue love, and earnestly desire spiritual gifts...**

Our Heavenly Father created us in His image and after His likeness. Mankind without God in their lives through the new birth live by the force of the soul: the mind, will, emotions, imagination, intellect, and reason or logic... all apart from God. Christians are privileged to have all of these faculties of the soul, which should be under submission to their personal spirit- united with and obedient to the Holy Spirit. We therefore operate in the full benefit of faith-directed intelligence; faith and reason complementing and working together rather than being antagonistic polar opposites. The lost as we have discussed have faith in dead works, with the majority via secular humanism making man and so called 'human potential' their god.

The child of God with divine intention must live by faith, fully utilizing all human potential with spiritual discernment. One of the ways that God facilitates our appropriate use and balance of faith and reason is achieved by the gift of tongues. He has provided this method as a bridge that brings these two into perfect oneness. The gift of tongues brings the natural use of the human tongue and the supernatural activity of the Holy Spirit together into a single experience. That union transcends the dimensions of faith and logic. **"Faith without works is dead"**, but when this union occurs the 'mysteries of God' are released into the natural realm and thereby there is an exponential increase in spiritual wisdom. This is precisely why the enemy fights against it: tongues truly strengthens the believer in every aspect of spiritual life, and **is** a strong catalyst to the release and increasing manifestation of all Holy Spirit gifts.

It empowers us to **"walk by faith and not by sight"** accomplishing exploits directed by the Lord.

This is an argument from silence and is found no where in the Scriptures, but I believe that when the Lord Jesus (as fully man) went alone daily to pray and commune with the Father, He may well have employed the gift of tongues in all night prayer. We will need to ask Him on the other side as to whether or not that was the case, but it makes 'sense' to me.

**Faith** is a spiritual force which comes from God and pierces through into our cosmos from the realm of Heaven. It is not a human attitude requiring mental effort on our part, nor is it a dry religious concept of ideology. It is truly 'out of this world', and comes to us individually by our spiritually **hearing the word of God (Romans 10:17)** with God imparting to us **a measure of faith (Romans 12:3)**, as we have seen.

Logic on the other hand is a function of intellect, the ability of the human mind to rationalize, invent, mentally conceive, and foresee possible conclusions. As much of a blessing of God as logic is, it very often works in direct opposition and antagonism to faith. Its inherent tendency is to substitute a natural explanation for a supernatural event or claim, or create an excuse for something it does not comprehend. A clear example is the so-called **Jesus Seminars** where apostate men- 'Christian' in name only- have voted out large portions of Scriptures rejecting the miracles of Holy Writ, and applying allegory to much of God's Holy Word. They will stand before God at the White Throne Judgment and give an account, to their shame and eternal loss.

Logic is therefore very fallible not recognizing its own limitations. It explains away everything miraculous according to human rationale, denying the reality of transforming faith. It has its origins in the philosophy of Aristotle, sadly which is firmly entrenched in the western world. On the other side of the coin, 'blind' faith which is not originating in God is very dangerous as well. It leads to embarrassing presumption and often ridicule.

The Bible says that **Life and death are in the power of the tongue**, and Jesus said **Out of your own mouth I will judge you**. The gift of tongues requires a certain humility and is an act of faith in its daily use. Without question, people who pray in tongues experience more visions, have stronger prophetic insights, function in revelation knowledge, and have more supernatural encounters which may include angelic visitations, than do others who do not employ tongues to build themselves up.

As Paul said:

**1 Corinthians 14:14,15... *For if I pray in a tongue, my spirit prays, but my mind is unfruitful. What then? I will pray with the Spirit, and I will pray with the mind [understanding], I will sing with the Spirit, and I will sing also with the mind [understanding].***

He fully understood the value of faith **and** reason working together, moving each other along in deeper spiritual experience, power, and the tangible results of answered prayer. Speaking in tongues is considered by many even in the church as aberrant or abnormal, uncouth, undignified, bizarre, offensive, and a host of other pejoratives. In reality it can only begin to edify us as an exercise of the Spirit when it has attacked and slain our ego and pride.

**1 Corinthians 1:27-29... *God has chosen the foolish things... weak things... base things... despised things... and the things which are not... that no flesh should glory in His presence.***

What happens to a believer who is privileged to receive this prayer language? Confusion, doubt, and religious conflict disappear. Faith is no longer just a doctrinal statement, but rather a potent life force in that believer. A flood of revelation is released and the tangible presence and voice of God are more easily discerned. Tongues open our minds to dimensions far beyond human reason and human reach. This is no departure from historic New Testament Christianity because embracing all the gifts of the Spirit including the gift of tongues (especially as our prayer language-united with thoughtful prayer), will strengthen and effectively build up the Body of Christ in preparation of the Bride. We must allow the Holy Spirit to bridge the gap between faith and logic, fully manifesting Himself as we allow Him to have His way in all aspects of our Christian walk.

**Mark 16:17... *And these signs shall follow those who believe: In My Name they will cast out demons; they will speak with new tongues...***



## ***Chapter 9- The Foundational Principle of Laying On of Hands***

In human relationships touch is of such paramount importance. We find in the literature of psychology many volumes written of studies showing how the lack of demonstrated affection in the act of touching has caused many personalities to be stunted and warped in natural development. In contemporary thought the method of **attachment parenting** is showing great promise in promoting mental and emotional health with children growing with a greater sense of self worth, purpose, and enthusiasm about their abilities to grow well and whole in every area of life.

On the other hand the enemy of our souls continues to assault the seed of mankind with the perversion of physical relationship. The pandemic of sexually deviant behavior involves touching with selfish or perverted motives. Child abuse, both physical and sexual, adult rape, illicit sex of all kinds, spousal abuse (predominantly wife battering), and all other forms of inappropriate touch find their essential roots in the need to touch and be touched.

In the doctrine of **laying on of hands** we see the combination of two power sources for a focused purpose. The power of spoken words- to create, release, or activate- and the power of touch to impart something special, something catalytic that will accelerate God's purposes in a channeled direction.

In the outstanding book ***The Blessing*** by Gary Smalley and Dr. John Trent, the authors vividly describe both scriptural examples as well as case studies taken from their private practices, of the profound positive effects of appropriate touch combined with declarations of love or affirmation that can impart and unlock destiny. They define five basic parts of the blessing:

- Meaningful Touch
- A Spoken Message
- Attaching "High Value" to the One Being Blessed
- Picturing a Special Future for the One Being Blessed
- An Active Commitment to Fulfill the Blessing

Each time that a blessing was bestowed in the Scriptures, meaningful touch provided intimacy that set a caring background to the words that were spoken. Kissing, hugging, and **the laying on of hands** were all a part of imparting the blessing. The act of touch is a key to communicating warmth, affection, acceptance, and affirmation to another. To see the blessing blossom and grow in another's life we need to verbalize a personal message with good words that provide genuine acceptance, words of high value. There needs to be the recognition that this person is valuable both to God and others. We will look at some examples in the Scriptures where the act of blessing pictured a special future that carried the weight of prophecy to be fulfilled.

In our personal experience though we must be careful not to impart grandiose accomplishments as declaration of a person's future, when we have not heard from the Lord. Unless we truly receive a prophetic word, which will of course need to be tested by the person with confirmation in the mouth of two or three witnesses- we should focus on a special future that is based on the individual's apparent natural bent. God the Father is continually at work in each of us to bring out the best in us. We do need the guidance, encouragement, and active commitment on the part of those who are important in our lives to help us fulfill the blessing and accomplish God's greater purposes. We must be willing to do the same for others, which is an aspect of our fitting effectively together in the Body of Christ. The Scriptures are full of examples of such blessings conferred. Let's look closely at some of the more pivotal ones in the history of God's dealing with mankind by way of the chosen.

I don't think it is a stretch to look at the blessing of Isaac upon Jacob as a primary example of the impartation of blessing with the laying on of hands. The incident in Genesis 27 involved deception on the part of Jacob and Rebekah his mother, stealing the birthright that initially belonged to Esau as the firstborn. This is a case where human behavior though not righteous, facilitated the fulfilling of God's eternal purposes. It is clear in the account of Jacob's life that God intended to bless Jacob above Esau. We read:

**Genesis 27:26-30...** *Then his father Isaac said to him, Please come near and kiss me, my son. See the smell of my son-- like the smell of a field which Jehovah has blessed. And may God give you of the dew of heaven and of the fatness of the earth, and an abundance of grain and new wine. Let peoples serve you, and nations bow down to you. Be lord over your brothers, and let your mother's sons bow down to you. Cursed be those who curse you, and blessed be those who bless you. And as soon as Isaac had finished blessing Jacob, when Jacob had just gone out from the presence of Isaac his father...*

Chapter 9- Laying on of Hands

As the story reveals though Isaac's intention was to bless his first born son Esau, he had mixed God's desire to bless with his natural carnal tendencies which blinded him. Instead Isaac blessed Jacob, but due to his physical blindness- he blessed blindly, both physically and spiritually. Although this reveals Isaac's lack of spiritual maturity, he did bless both of his sons by faith, and God honored his blessings.

The account shows that Jacob had to run for his life for fear of Esau. After two decades of self-will, Jacob was confronted with a divine encounter where the pre-incarnate Lord Jesus personally imparts destiny to him with **the laying on of hands**.

**Genesis 32:24-30...** *And Jacob was left alone, and a man wrestled with him until the break of dawn. And when the man saw that He did not prevail against him, He touched the socket of his hip; and the socket of Jacob's hip was dislocated as he wrestled with Him. And the man said, Let Me go, for the dawn is breaking. But Jacob said, I will not let You go unless You bless me. And He said to him, What is your name? And he said, Jacob. And He said, Your name will no longer be called Jacob, but Israel; for you have struggled with God and with men, and have prevailed. And Jacob asked Him and said, Please tell me Your name. But He said, Why is it that you ask My name [for it is Wonderful]? And He blessed him there. And Jacob called the name of the place Peniel, for he said, **I have seen God face to face**, and yet my life has been preserved.*

According to Hosea this man was the Angel of the Lord- Christ Jesus. We read this in:

**Hosea 12:4&5...** *Indeed he contended with the Angel and prevailed; He wept and made supplication to Him. At Bethel he found Him; and there He spoke with us, Even Jehovah the God of hosts; Jehovah is His memorial.*

The Lord as a man wrestled with Jacob that He might touch his natural strength- his natural life. This was the beginning of Jacob's spiritual transformation, and although his outward living in many instances showed no apparent change, he had been dealt with by the Lord who changed his name from Jacob (deceiver) to Israel (a prince who has power with God).

Many decades later- perhaps 100 years (Jacob lived to be 147- see **Genesis 47:28**), the **principle of laying on of hands** is used by Jacob to bless his grandchildren by Joseph. The account clearly shows the Hand of God in the impartation of the birthright blessing:

**Genesis 48:3-5;9;14-16...** *And Jacob said to Joseph, The All-sufficient God appeared to me at Luz [Bethel] in the land of Canaan and blessed me. And He said to me, Behold, I am going to make you fruitful and*

*multiply you, and I will make you a company of peoples and will give this land to your seed after you for an everlasting possession. And now your two sons, who were born to you in the land of Egypt before I came to you in Egypt, are mine; Ephraim and Manasseh will be mine... And Joseph said to his father, They are my sons, whom God has given to me here. And he said, Bring them to me, please, that I may bless them...*

***But Israel stretched out his right hand and laid it upon Ephraim's head- although he was the younger- and his left hand upon Manasseh's head, guiding his hands with insight, even though Manasseh was the firstborn. And he blessed Joseph and said, The God before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked, The God who has shepherded me all my life to this day, The Angel who has redeemed me from all evil, bless the boys; And may my name be named on them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac; And may they be a teeming multitude in the midst of the earth.***

Jacob's blessing of his two grandsons by Joseph was full of insight, whereas his father Isaac had blessed blindly. Although his physical eyes were dim (**v10**), Jacob (**Israel**) was mature and moved with power in union with God's purposes. He was clear in his spirit that God's perfect will was to bless and establish Ephraim above Manasseh who was the firstborn. This shows that receiving the birthright does not depend on our natural birth, but rather on God's predestination (see **Romans 9:10-13**). It is worth noting in this passage that Jacob's mention of God three times in verses 15 and 16 refers distinctly to the Triune God. The God before whom Abraham and Isaac walked is **the Father**... the God who shepherded Jacob his whole life is **the Spirit**... and the Angel who redeemed him from all evil is **the Son**.

In the subsequent chapter 49, Jacob blesses all twelve of his sons... although not clearly stated probably with the laying on of hands. He demonstrated his spiritual maturity in God by prophesying with blessing concerning each of his sons, clearly speaking with divine authority- God speaking through him. His sons became the twelve tribes of Israel, which is a type of the church- God's household composed of all believers. Exercising wisdom and discretion, what was spoken prophetically by Jacob concerning his sons may be applied to the church and the spiritual experience of believers, as well as to the children of Israel in the natural.

**The principle of laying on of hands** in the Levitical priesthood ceremonies (**Leviticus 4:15;8:14;24:14** etc.) is best seen in:



Chapter 9- Laying on of Hands

**Lev.16:21&22...** *And Aaron shall **lay both his hands** on the head of the live goat and confess over it all the iniquities of the children of Israel and all their transgressions; even all their sins; and he shall put them on the head of the goat, and shall send it away into the wilderness... Thus the goat shall bear away all their iniquities on itself to a solitary land, and he shall let the goat go in the wilderness.*

Through **the laying on of hands** the children of Israel, the Levites, and the sacrificial animal were identified with each other. Every aspect of the service of the tabernacle and the ministry of the Levitical priesthood was very exact and required extended apprenticeship training. Great care was taken to eliminate carelessness by modeled discipline so as not to offend God. We will look closely at the tabernacle teachings in the future book ***Cleansing the Temple*** and see the beauty of Christ and His atoning work revealed in its types and shadows. The attainment of **full stature** in the Body of Christ behooves us to recognize that discipline is needed in the Christian life, and in service in the church, that we may be His **Holy, Royal, Warrior-Priesthood**.

A critical example of the **principle of laying on of hands** is played out in:

**Numbers 27:18-23...** *And Jehovah said to Moses, Take Joshua the son of Nun, a man in whom is the Spirit, and **lay your hand upon him**; And set him before Eleazar the priest and before the whole assembly, and give him a charge in their sight. And **you shall put some of your honor upon him**, so that the whole assembly of the children of Israel may obey him. And he shall stand before Eleazar the priest, and he shall inquire for him... before Jehovah... And Moses did as Jehovah commanded him, and he took Joshua... And he **laid his hands upon him and gave him a charge** just as Jehovah had spoken through Moses.*

**Deuteronomy 34:9...** *And Joshua the son of Nun **was filled with the spirit of wisdom, for Moses had laid his hands upon him**; and the children of Israel listened to him and did as Jehovah had commanded Moses.*

This is again a prime example in the Old Testament of the power of impartation that is resident and transferable through **the laying on of hands**.

In the New Testament accounts numerous examples give tremendous insight into the power of **the laying on of hands**. We see even in the life of our Lord Jesus Christ that a primary desire of God is to impart blessing as well as healing via this means.

*Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!*

**Matthew 19:13-15...** *Then little children were brought to Him that He might put His hands on them and pray, but the disciples rebuked them. But Jesus said, Let the little children come to Me, and do not forbid them; for of such is the kingdom of heaven. And **He laid His hands on them** and departed from there.*

**Mark 10:15,16...** *Truly I say to you, whoever does not receive the Kingdom of God like a little child shall by no means enter into it. **And taking them into His arms, He fervently blessed them, laying His hands on them.***

**Mark 8:23...** *And He took hold of the hand of the blind man and led him forth outside of the village. And He spat on his eyes and **laid His hands on him** and asked him, Do you see anything? And he looked up and said, I see men, for I see them as trees, walking. Then **again He laid His hands upon his eyes**, and the man looked intently and was restored, and he began to see all things clearly.*

One of my all-time favorite portion of Scripture that has had no small controversy concerning its authenticity is found at the end of the **Gospel of Mark**. I include it in its entirety here because of the deeply profound nature of its commission to us directly from our Precious Lord.

**Mark 16:15-18;20...** *And He said to them, Go into all the world and proclaim the gospel to all creation. He who believes and is baptized shall be saved, but he who does not believe shall be condemned. And these signs will accompany those who believe: in My name they will cast out demons; they will speak with new tongues; they will pick up serpents; and if they drink anything deadly, it shall by no means harm them; **they will lay hands on the sick, and they will be well...** And they went out and preached everywhere the Lord working with them and **confirming the word by the accompanying signs.***

**Luke 4:40...** *And when the sun was setting, all those who had any that were sick with various diseases brought them to Him; and **He laid His hands on each of them and healed them.***

**Luke 13:13...** *And **He laid His hands on her**, and instantly she was made erect and began to glorify God.*

As we have seen in the commission given in the Gospel of Mark and in the following portions from the book of Acts, we as His disciples have the authority through His indwelling Holy Spirit to lay hands on others for healing, for blessing, for impartation of the gifts of the Spirit, and to help activate the calling that God has for those individuals.

**Acts 8:17...** *Then **they laid hands on them**, and they received the Holy Spirit.*

## Chapter 9- Laying on of Hands

**Acts 9:17...** *And Ananias... entered into the house; and **laying his hands on him**, he said, Saul, brother, the Lord has sent me-- Jesus, who appeared to you on the road on which you were coming-- **so that you may receive your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit.***

**Acts 13:2-4...** *And as they were ministering to the Lord and fasting, the Holy Spirit said, Set apart for Me now Barnabas and Saul for the work to which I have called them. Then when they had fasted and **laid their hands on them**, they sent them away. They...having been sent out by the Holy Spirit...*

**1 Timothy 1:18,19; 4:12-16 (NKJV)...** *This charge I commit to you, son Timothy, **according to the prophecies previously made concerning you**, that by them you may wage the good warfare, having faith and a good conscience, which some having rejected, concerning the faith have suffered shipwreck...*

*Let no one despise your youth, but be an example to the believers in word, in conduct, in love, in spirit, in faith, in purity. Till I come, give attention to reading, to exhortation, to doctrine. **Do not neglect the gift that is in you, which was given to you by prophecy with the laying on of the hands of the presbytery.** Meditate on these things; give yourself entirely to them, that your progress may be evident to all. Take heed to yourself and to the doctrine. Continue in them, for in doing this you will save both yourself and those who hear you.*

The word **shipwreck** implies that the individual Christian life as well as the corporate Church life are like sailing ships on a stormy sea. They need to be safeguarded by ever-increasing and consistent faith, and a good or clear conscience. The **laying on of hands** as we have seen has two aspects and functions: one for **identification** as referenced in **Lev.1:4**, and the other for **impartation**. These two are connected for without identification there can be no basis for imparting something. The elders including the apostle Paul 'identified' with Timothy and God's call on his life- signified by the **laying on of hands**, and thereby the gift of grace to 'build' the church at Ephesus was imparted to Timothy.

**2 Timothy 1:6-10 (NKJV)...** *Therefore I remind you to **stir up the gift of God which is in you through the laying on of my hands.** For **God has not given us a spirit of fear, but of power and of love and of a sound mind.** Therefore do not be ashamed of the testimony of our Lord, nor of me His prisoner, but share with me in the sufferings for the gospel according to the power of God, Who has saves us and called us with a holy calling, not according to our works, but according to His own purpose and grace which was given to us in Christ Jesus before time began, but has now been revealed by the appearing of our Savior Jesus Christ, who has abolished death and brought life and immortality to light through the gospel...*

The two letters to Paul's student and son in the faith are separated by years, and changing circumstances. Paul in the second letter to Timothy is imprisoned, facing execution, and many of the churches that he had established are experiencing the degrading influence of mixture with the world and false pagan practices. He challenges Timothy to not only continue to declare the true gospel, but also to anticipate and even welcome the suffering that accompanies standing for truth in an increasingly hostile world. Timothy was beaten to death by hoodlums in front of his congregation (see ***Living in the Combat Zone*** by Rick Renner).

Our Holy God did not only save us to enjoy His blessings but He has also called us with a holy calling, a divine destiny according to His perfect will for a specific goal, to fulfill His glorious purpose. We as true believers must be ready at all times to receive the grace needed in the moment, whether it is to live for Him, or to die for Him. He has the infinite wisdom to orchestrate all things to His ends and the consummation of all things in the not-too-distant future.

It is clear that our God loves diversity, especially with respect to His children. For one soul He desires the power of creativity to be released in the area of music, art, or dance. To another the impartation of individual purpose will manifest in a political career that truly honors God. Or a business that provides exceptional service and value to its customers. Or in teaching, or scientific discovery, or technology, or any one of the myriad choices that mankind has in human potential carried out. Whatever the arena, God desires and expects wholeness, completion, and even perfection in human endeavor-- that clearly reveals His touch. The imprimatur of the Holy Spirit sealed with the Blood of Jesus has both temporal impact and eternal significance.

But it must be by His sovereign leading. We need to be careful to not be premature or presumptuous. We must pray through, seek wise godly counsel, be in accountable relationships that help us guard our hearts, and only move in response to the Holy Spirit's compelling. The Word cautions: ***Lay hands on no man suddenly.*** The hidden truth of this warning is that spiritual energy can be transmitted both ways-- either from the flow of the Holy Spirit through us, or the 'sliming' of the forces of darkness. When we are 'prayed up', and have kept our accounts short with the Lord (no unrepented, unconfessed sin in our lives) we can anticipate victory. Sometimes though we may find ourselves fighting unnecessary battles. This is why we need the mind of Christ-- to be timely in obedience and action in order to pull down strongholds, and to impart divine blessings. Let us therefore be mindful to exercise **the principle of laying on of hands** with humility, spiritual direction, and for the edifying of the Body of Christ.

## ***Chapter 10-The Foundational Principle of Resurrection of the Dead***

God's Grace is limitless... His Blessings beyond human comprehension- thank the Lord for the Holy Spirit's continual revelation and empowering work in the Body of Christ.

When I was 21 years old, while on a drug-induced binge at the Whiskey a-Go-Go in Hollywood... I was knocked out by the LAPD, and carted off to jail. While unconscious in the squad car I had a supernatural encounter- I found myself apparently naked on a cold slab in pitch darkness overhearing a conversation about me between two opposing voices. One was sinister and struck terror in my heart- he was trying to convince the other that I should die and be taken 'somewhere' with him. The other voice- although far more powerful was compassionate, and after a time said, " He has yet to come to Me, and therefore I will allow him to return to earth **NOW**... "

The moment I heard the word 'now' the bottom fell out of what I was resting upon, and I found myself hurtling through space with a heavenly sound of music in my ears, and a ring of fire around my body that was moving seemingly at the speed of light. I was soaring through a great expanse- passing galaxies, planets, comets, and asteroids. I felt a joy and peace that was electric. I found myself looking in the distance at an object the size of a small beautiful blue-green marble... which is where I was apparently headed, since I was making a beeline for it at an incredible speed. I became aware of its rotation, recognized it as our beautiful planet- and could perceive the continents and cloud formations on its surface.

I thought "Oh-oh... I'm going to crash head first into planet earth!" As I approached I saw in rotation the western hemisphere, then North America, then the West Coast, then So. CA, and as if I was zooming in on a Google Satellite map- I prepared myself for the worst...

All of a sudden about 1000 ft. above the surface my body took a sharp left and shot past the beach communities and headed out over the Pacific Ocean; I looked back to see the coastline thin and getting thinner. Abruptly I plunged into the cold ocean waters and was sinking and

shrinking simultaneously! I was getting smaller and smaller while going deeper and deeper, although somehow I was no longer scared.

I found myself rising again until I was at the surface and 'pop' I was floating upward in a water molecule rising up, up, up into a passing cloud which the wind blew east, back over the coastal terrain. It kept rising and getting colder until in a drop of water I found myself falling down- landing on a mountain height, and then flowing down a trickle to a stream to a rushing river... then I entered a pipe, sailed through it until I came out via a sprinkler system onto someone's nice green lawn. I laughed and laughed to myself as I lay there surrounded by blades of grass that looked like tall trees- like in the 'Ants' animation film.

I am compelled to say all this to get to this point in this extended 'vision':

In an instant- I found myself fully clothed in Levi jeans, hiking boots, and a plaid shirt with very short hair- (in real life in 1971, I wore stove pipe bell bottom jeans, silk shirts, leather boots, and had a huge 'afro'). I was laying flat on my back in a wilderness desert scene. It was a beautiful spring-like day with birds singing, little creatures scurrying around, with a pleasant breeze blowing. I felt wonderful, and started walking toward a distant mountain range, along a dirt path headed nowhere in particular (though I knew I was actually unconscious headed to jail), but I was enjoying the dream journey and trying to process all that came before.

I looked down at my straight legged jeans and hiking boots which I didn't own, and then noticed a pair of sandaled feet in a long robe walking on my immediate right- almost touching me. I looked up reluctantly into the face of Jesus, who smiled tenderly as we walked along. I was shocked speechless... He spoke to me at length but without opening His mouth- I could hear Him so clearly telling me that my life of drug addiction and depravity could be so different: I could be free! I couldn't process what I was experiencing and insulted Him by saying that I was having an LSD hallucination, that He was a figment of my vivid imagination 'under the influence', and reminded Him that I was in reality on my way to jail.

He stopped and turned to face me- with a look of loving pity in His beautiful eyes... what a face! What a humble powerful presence! Slowly He began to brighten... He looked toward the sloping mountains in the distance and communicated still without speaking:

***"Make this mountain whole!"*** It was obviously not a suggestion, but rather a direct command! I looked bewildered at the horizon and noticed for the first time that the peaks in the distance looked like an unfinished painting on a canvas with a white 'unpainted' patch to the far right. I

*Chapter 10- Resurrection of the Dead*

responded with tears flowing, "How? How can I do this, when I'm not really here, I'm not able to stop my addiction, I don't even believe in You! How? How can I do the impossible? How?"... at that point I was uncontrollably sobbing, not able to comprehend anything that was 'happening'.

He looked deep into my soul- and finally opening His mouth, He spoke two profound and cataclysmic words: ***"BY FAITH!!!"***

The instant He said that, the wind kicked up dramatically, the bright sky darkened and a giant thunderhead came from the other side of the mountain range, and with peels of thunder, and lightning flashing shot toward us like a fast-forward movie! It hovered above while I cowered with fear. I looked at Jesus and He intently looking at it, moved His eyes toward the vacant place on the horizon. The cloud dissipated exposing a massive granite slab spinning on an axis with light flashing off its surface. It immediately zoomed into the distant gap, fit perfectly into the range like a missing puzzle piece, and then with a very loud sound- **it became whole!**

I looked at Him and He started radiating brighter and brighter with His arms outstretched, with ripples of Divine Love moving continually all over me. He smiled oh-so-tenderly... and then suddenly, I woke up- handcuffed on my face in a cell at the LA County jail. Now nearly thirty seven years later, I understand that by faith I not only got delivered from all my addictive behavior, but I was also physically and emotionally healed. Even more precious- I got saved, blessed with a beautiful wife of now 35 years, two fine children- a son Anthony, and a daughter Sarah- who grew up in the Faith, and we have two precious little grandchildren (with a third one on the way) - Caleb and Amber who fill us with joy and awe at God's continuing Amazing Grace.

In many seasons of fasting and prayer- the Lord has shown me that the great distance between me and the mountain range was the last three + decades, and that the primary mountain I was walking toward was actually Mt. Zion! I am therefore also called to participate with my brothers and sisters in Christ in the process of fulfilling what [Shawn Bolz](#) calls the Isaiah 58 mandate, which will beautify the City of God, the New Jerusalem with many, many, many more souls- treasures out of darkness, the rewards of The Lamb's sufferings.

Before this experience I didn't believe in the hereafter, although as stated previously I had paranormal experiences due to being seriously entrenched in the occult. I wanted power and influence which the enemy provided by way of the idolatry of false religion. I gravitated to what did

not offend me, like what is being currently promoted worldwide via the Internet by Oprah Winfrey and Eckhart Tolle- **The New Earth** paradigm. The level of deception of the enemy is truly staggering! Here we find one of the most powerful women in history rejecting biblical Christianity, and sitting at the feet (so to speak) of a New Age Guru who denies Jesus Christ as the only way to relationship with God. Their lessons based upon his international 'teaching' and other books such as **The Power of Now** are interwoven with Buddhist thought, New Age alternatives to biblical truth, and the elevation of the human personality to the dizzying heights of being of God... all without the acknowledgment of our damning sin and bankrupt condition without Christ's atoning work on the cross.

The new birth is scorned as myth- and the Lord Jesus' words are twisted to mean what they do not. Someone in the Body of Christ needs to stand up for the truth and thoughtfully refute these false teachings that are leading so many people, including nominal Christians astray. I am seriously considering undertaking a verse by verse/topic by topic apologetic about this very dangerous material, but frankly hope that others will go before me, since I have a series of five books in the works already (this one included- which is the first of a trilogy).

The Christian faith is unique in its comprehensive presentation of the afterlife. Until I began studying the Bible in earnest, I had a radical aversion to the reality of holiness, judgment, and perdition. In this progressive (that is sequential) teaching concerning the **elementary principles of Christ**, we will look intently at the **doctrine of the Resurrection**- followed by the sobering teaching of **Eternal Judgment**. I began this chapter with my testimony of a divine encounter because it was the first inkling that I had apart from the Catholic church which I had rejected, of the fact that there is life after death. There will be two forms of resurrection- **The Resurrection of the Just (righteous in Christ)** and **The Resurrection of the Unjust (unrighteous damned)**. These two foundational principles of **Resurrection** and **Eternal Judgment** are the most difficult to address because of the stark contrast between the saved and the lost and what Eternity holds for each.

The reality of the **doctrine of the resurrection** is dealt directly by Jesus when He is confronted by the Sadducees, a religious sect within Judaism who did not believe in the resurrection, in angels, or in spirits. While the Pharisees were considered orthodox, the Sadducees were ancient 'modernists' throwing out things that didn't suit their fancy. This teaching is so pivotal to the Christian faith that it is laid out in three of the four gospels: **Matthew 22:23-33; Mark 12:18-27; Luke 20:27-38**. They posed a dilemma regarding the Jewish requirement for brothers in a family to marry the widow of one of their household, who dies before



Chapter 10- Resurrection of the Dead

having children to carry the heritage (lineage) forward. Seven brothers all died before the woman does, and their lame question is:

**Matthew 22:28-33...** *'In the resurrection, then, whose wife will she be of the seven? For they all had her. And Jesus answered and said to them, **You err, not knowing the Scriptures nor the power of God. For in the resurrection they neither marry nor are given in marriage, but are like the angels in Heaven. But concerning the resurrection of the dead, have you not read that which was spoken to you by God, saying, "I am the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob"? He is not the God of the dead, but of the living. And when the crowds heard this, they were astonished at His teaching.***

They did not know the Scriptures, the Old Testament verses that concern the subject of resurrection the way they needed to... nor the power of God inherent in the power of the resurrection to come. And again in what is considered by many the oldest book of the Bible:

**Job 19:25-27 (NKJV)**... *For I know that my Redeemer lives, and He shall stand at last on the earth; **after my skin is destroyed, this I know, That in my flesh I shall see God, Whom I shall see for myself, and my eyes shall behold, and not another.** How my heart yearns within me!*

When the Lord Christ heals a paralytic man on the Sabbath contrary to the Pharisees' misinterpretation of God's Law, Jesus responded to their accusations with a comprehensive teaching concerning **the resurrection of the dead**. These religious hypocrites failed to recognize that the Sabbath is for man, and not man for the Sabbath (see **Mark 2:27**) and is designated as a rest to man. They did not care for the sick man's condition, but only their ritual of Sabbath keeping.

**John 5:17-21;24-29(NKJV)**... *But Jesus answered them, "**My Father has been working until now, and I have been working.**" Therefore the Jews sought all the more to kill Him, because He not only broke the Sabbath, but also said that God was His Father, making Himself equal with God.*

*Then Jesus answered and said to them, "**Most assuredly, I say to you, the Son can do nothing of Himself, but what He sees the Father do; for whatever He does, the Son also does in like manner. For the Father loves the Son, and shows Him all things that He Himself does; and He will show Him greater works than these, that you may marvel. For as the Father raises the dead and gives life to them, even so the Son gives life to whom He will...***

**Most assuredly, I say to you, the hour is coming, and now is, when the dead will hear the voice of the Son of God; and those who hear**

***will live. For as the Father has life in Himself, so He has granted the Son to have life in Himself, and has given Him authority to execute judgment also, because He is the Son of Man. Do not marvel at this; for the hour is coming in which all who are in the graves will hear His voice and come forth- those who have done good, to the resurrection of life, and those who have done evil, to the resurrection of condemnation.***

Therefore **verse 29** makes a clear distinction between two separate resurrections. The **resurrection of life** is the resurrection of saved believers, the blood-bought children of God which will take place before the millennial reign of Christ begins. The **resurrection of condemnation** for all who practiced evil and rejected the gift of Eternal life through Jesus Christ's atoning death on the Cross, will take place after the millennium. All dead unbelievers will be resurrected after the thousand years to be judged at **the Great White Throne Judgment**. We will look at the sober aspects of **the elementary principle of Eternal Judgment** in the next chapter. Let's look at some proof texts concerning the distinctions and characteristics between the two different **resurrections of the dead**.

A brief parenthesis is necessary at this point though since it is important to look briefly at instances recorded in the Gospels of the Lord Jesus raising people from the dead. In each of these cases though the individuals would die again since these were not part of the final resurrection of the dead. It is interesting to note that three of the Gospels- Mark, Luke, and John record one each of these different incidents.

Jairus' young daughter was healed just after dying: **Mark 5:22-24; 35-43...** *And one of the rulers of the synagogue came, Jairus by name, and seeing Him, fell at His feet; and he entreated Him much, saying, My little girl is at the point of death. Please come and lay Your hands on her that she may be healed and live. And He went with him...*

*While He was still speaking, some came from the house of the ruler of the synagogue, saying, Your daughter has died. Why bother the Teacher any longer? But Jesus... said to the ruler... Do not be afraid-- only believe...*  
**v41** *And He took hold of the child's hand and said to her , Talitha koum! which being interpreted is, Little girl, to you I say, Arise! And immediately the little girl rose up and walked about, for she was twelve years old. And immediately, they were amazed with great amazement.*

The widow of Nain's son had been dead several days: **Luke 7:11-15...** *And soon afterward He went into a city called Nain, and His disciples went with Him, as well as a large crowd. And as He came near the gate of the city, behold, one who had died was being carried out, an only son of his mother, and she was a widow... And when the Lord saw her, He was moved with compassion for her and said to her, Do not weep. And He*

Chapter 10- Resurrection of the Dead

*came near and touched the bier, and those carrying it stood still. And He said, Young man, to you I say, Arise. And the dead man sat up and began to speak. And He gave him to his mother.*

The most dramatic account was that of Lazarus who had been dead four days and already buried in a tomb:

**John 11:1-45... v21***Then Martha said to Jesus, Lord, if You had been here, my brother would not have died. But even now I know that whatever You ask of God, God will give You. Jesus said to her, Your brother will rise again. Martha said to Him, I know that He will rise again in the resurrection in the last day. **Jesus said to her, I am the resurrection and the life; he who believes in Me, even if he should die, shall live; And everyone who believes in Me shall by no means die forever.** Do you believe this? She said to Him, Yes, Lord; I have believed that You are the Christ, the son of God, He who comes into the world. v43* And when He had said these things, He cried out with a loud voice, Lazarus, come out! And he who had died came out, bound hand and foot with cloths, and his face was bound about with a handkerchief. Jesus said to them, Loose him and let him go. Many of the Jews therefore who had come to Mary and beheld the things that He did believed in Him.

As we saw earlier, since Jesus had been baptized in the Jordan River by John the Baptist, He was able to exercise the authority and power of resurrection even before going to the cross. A set of precious truths are revealed in **Romans 1 and 6** and **Philippians 3**:

**Romans 1:3-6(NKJV)**... *concerning His Son Jesus Christ our Lord, who was born of the seed of David according to the flesh, and declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the Spirit of holiness, by **the resurrection from the dead**, through whom we have received grace and apostleship for obedience to the faith among all nations for His name, among who you also are the called of Jesus Christ.*

**Romans 6:3-11(NKJV)**... *Or do you not know that as many of us as were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into His death? Therefore we were buried with Him through baptism into death, that just as **Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also shall walk in newness of life.** For if we have been united together in the likeness of His death, certainly **we also shall be in the likeness of His resurrection**,... v8 Now if we died with Christ, we believe that we shall also live with Him, **knowing that Christ, having been raised from the dead, dies no more. Death no longer has dominion over Him.** For the death that He died, He died to sin once for all; but the life that He lives, He lives to God. Likewise you also, reckon yourselves to be dead indeed to sin, but alive to God in Christ Jesus our Lord.*

**Philippians 3:20,21**... *For our citizenship is in Heaven, from which we also eagerly wait for the Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ, who will transform*

*Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!*

*our lowly body that it may be conformed to His glorious body, according to the working by which He is able even to subdue all things to Himself.*

This hopeful Scripture reveals that the transformation of our body is the ultimate consummation of God's salvation. In the new birth God first regenerated our spirit (**John 3:6**), He is daily transforming our soul (**Romans 12:2**), and either in the Rapture of the Church or when we cross over He will transform our body, making us the same as Christ Jesus in all three aspects of our being.

Therefore concerning **the Resurrection of the Just**:

**1 Corinthians 20-23;41-44;51-57...** *But now Christ has been raised from the dead, the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep. For since through man came death, through man also came **the resurrection from the dead**. For just as in Adam all die, so also in Christ all will be made alive. But each one in his own order: the firstfruits Christ; then those who are Christ's at His coming...*

**v41-44...** *There is another glory of the sun, and another glory of the moon, and another glory of the stars; for stars differs from star in glory. So also is **the resurrection from the dead**. It is sown in corruption, it is raised in incorruption; It is sown in dishonor, it is raised in glory; it is sown in weakness, it is raised in power; It is sown a soulish body, it is raised a spiritual body...*

**v51-57...** *Behold, I tell you a mystery: We will not all sleep, but we will all be changed, In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trumpet; for the trumpet will sound, and **the dead will be raised incorruptible, and we will be changed**. For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality... then the word which is written will come to pass, "Death has been swallowed up unto victory"... But thanks be to God who gives us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.*

**1 Thessalonians 4:16-18 (NKJV)...** *For this we say to you by the word of the Lord, that we who are alive and remain until the coming of the Lord will by no means precede those who are asleep. For the Lord himself will descend from Heaven with a shout, with the voice of an archangel, and with the trumpet of God. And **the dead in Christ will rise first. Then we who are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air**. And thus we shall always be with the Lord. Therefore comfort one another with these words.*

Christ as the firstfruit of resurrection is the Firstborn from among the dead that He may be the Head of the Body (**Colossians 1:18; Ephesians 1:20-23**). Since He as the Head of the Body has been resurrected, we who are the Body will also be resurrected. A spiritual

*Chapter 10- Resurrection of the Dead*

body is a resurrected body saturated by the Spirit, in which the human spirit predominates in union with the Holy Spirit. The Lord's resurrection was His victory over satan, with the swallowing up of death resulting in the ultimate and complete victory that He has accomplished for us who believe in and partake in His resurrection. This victory should not be viewed as just an accomplished fact, but has to become our daily experience through the resurrected Christ, and His life-giving Spirit who is one with our spirit. And now for the contrast between **the resurrection of the just and the resurrection of the damned** at opposite ends of the 1,000 year reign of Christ on earth:

**Revelation 20:1-6...** *And I saw an angel coming down out of Heaven, having the key of the abyss and a great chain in his hand. And he laid hold of the dragon, the ancient serpent, who is the devil and satan, and bound him for a thousand years. And cast him into the abyss and shut it and sealed it over him, that he might not deceive the nations any longer until the thousand years were completed; after these things he must be loosed for a little while.*

*And I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was given to them. And I saw the souls of those who had been beheaded because of the testimony of Jesus and because of the word of God, and of those who had not worshiped the beast nor his image, and had not received the mark on their forehead and on their hand; and they lived and reigned with Christ for a thousand years. The rest of the dead did not live again until the thousand years were completed. **This is the first resurrection.***

***Blessed and holy is he who has part in the first resurrection; over these the second death has no authority, but they will be priests of God and of Christ and will reign with Him for a thousand years.***

The overcomers who are privileged to participate in the first and outstanding resurrection receive the reward of kingship which will empower them to reign with Christ in the millennial Kingdom. They will be both priests in worship of God the Father, Christ the Son, and Jehovah Holy Spirit- and kings reigning over the nations with our Lord, shepherding the people of God in the earth.

### **The resurrection of the damned: The Great White Throne Judgment**

**Revelation 20:11-15...** *And I saw a great white throne and Him who sat upon it, from whose face earth and heaven fled away, and no place was found for them. And I saw **the dead, the great and the small,***

*standing before the throne, and scrolls were opened; and another scroll was opened, which is **the Book of Life**. And the dead were judged by the things which were written in the scrolls, according to their works.*

*And the sea gave up the dead which were in it, and death and Hades gave up the dead which were in them; and they were judged, each of them, according to their works. And death and Hades were cast into the Lake of Fire. **This is the second death, the Lake of Fire. And if anyone was not found written in the Book of Life, he was cast into the Lake of Fire.***

In the first death, the soul and spirit of fallen humanity are separated from their body and are cast into hell. In the second death at the White Throne Judgment, the soul and spirit are reunited to their body in resurrection, and are then cast altogether into the Lake of Fire. They will perish in eternal torment which is the most horrible of outcomes. Perishing unbelievers will be judged according to the record of their works revealed in the scrolls, but will be ultimately condemned because of their unbelief revealed in that their names are not written in the Lamb's Book of Life. Not believing in the Lord Jesus Christ as Savior, God, and sovereign King is the unique sin that will cause people to perish forever in that day. The Lake of Fire has been prepared for the devil and his fallen angels (**Matthew 25:41**). Since unbelievers are of their father the devil and have followed him, they will all share in his judgment and become partakers of his eternal torment. This is the stark contrast between **the first and second resurrection**. Now in brief let us look more closely at **the elementary principle of Eternal Judgment**.

## ***Chapter 11- The Foundational Principle of Eternal Judgment***

Before delving into the sobering principle of eternal judgment, I need to clarify what I have seen as a misunderstanding in the Body of Christ. It is often detrimental to a clear understanding of what the whole counsel of God in His inspired Word, the Holy Bible reveals about an issue when one verse or portion of Scripture is taken out of context and caused to stand alone. I have heard more times than I can count and most recently in a political discourse, the misapplication of:

**Matthew 7:1,2...** *Do not judge, that you be not judged. For with what judgment you judge, you shall be judged; and with what measure you measure, it shall be measured to you.*

Keeping it in context one cannot make the misguided assertion that we are not to judge others in inappropriate circumstances when we include the rest of the Lord's word on the subject:

**Matthew 7:3-5...** *And why do you look at the splinter which is in your brother's eye, but the beam in your eye you do not consider? Or how can you say to your brother, Let me remove the splinter from your eye, and behold, the beam is in your eye? Hypocrite, **first remove the beam from your eye, and then you will see clearly to remove the splinter from your brother's eye.***

It is clear that what the Lord is pointing out is that each of us must be brutally honest about our own brokenness and need for repentance and confession leading to sanctification, before we seek to engender a change of heart in another. In no way does it abrogate our responsibility to seek to help others in drawing closer to the Lord in sincere transparency of heart and purity of mind and motive. This is particularly true in the community of believers where we are to bear one another's burdens.

**Galatians 6:1,2...** *Brothers, even if a man is overtaken in some offense, you who are spiritual restore such a one in a spirit of meekness, looking to yourself lest you also be tempted. **Bear one another's burdens, and in this way fulfill the law of Christ completely.***

The law of Christ is the law of love (**1 Corinthians 13**) and as an expression of the divine life working through us, this divine love allows us to bear another's burden until he or she is able to properly bear it themselves. It is with great care and motivated by love that we are to obey the Lord Jesus when he reminds us:

**John 7:24...** *Do not judge according to appearance, but **judge righteous judgment.***

This brings us full circle to the underlying issue that the writer of **Hebrews** addresses before he lists the elementary principles of Christ in Chapter 6. He says:

**Hebrews 5:14...** *But solid food is for the full-grown, who because of practice have their faculties exercised for **discriminating between both good and evil.***

In maturity we have the authority to **judge righteous judgment**, in humility with pure motive of heart. This delegated authority is so comprehensive that we are told:

**1 Corinthians 6:1-5...** *Does any one of you who has a case against another dare to be judged before the unrighteous and not before the saints? Or **do you not know that the saints will judge the world?** And if the world is judged by you, are you unworthy of the smallest judgments? Do you not know that **we will judge angels**, and not to mention things of this life? If then you hold judgments over things of this life, do you seat as judges those who are of no account in the church? I say this to your shame. **So there is no one wise among you, who will be able to discern between his brothers?***

The best discussion of this matter that I have found recently is the article **Toward Christian Justice** by *An Orthodox Jewish Rabbi* (his pseudonym), in **The Morning Star Journal vol.16 no.3 The Kingdom: Kingdom Power** issue (see morningstarministries.org). In it the author details the great need that the Body of Christ has, corporately and individually- to implement and follow the clear biblical guidelines in establishing a Spirit led system of justice and equity. We must remember that **righteousness and justice are the foundations of His throne (Psalms 97:2)**.

Christian maturity as we have seen involves the daily and even moment by moment transformation of the soul (mind, will, emotions, imagination). In the **Hebrews 5:14** verse above, another translation renders **because of practice** as **by reason of use**. We must always be willing to stretch toward greater spiritual growth... a deeper measure of



*Chapter 11- Eternal Judgment*

emulating in transparency Christ-like character, and likewise be willing to submit to correction- either by the Word, the Spirit, and those found trustworthy who personally care about us. This is how we sharpen our perception and mature our faculties to discern or discriminate between 'good and evil'. Let us therefore truly **judge righteous judgment**.

### **The Doctrine of Eternal Judgment**

**1 Chronicles 16: 29-36...** *Ascribe to Jehovah the glory of His name; bring an offering and come before Him. Worship Jehovah in holy splendor; Tremble before Him all the earth. Indeed the world has been established; it will not be moved; Let the heavens rejoice and the earth be glad; And let them say among the nations, Jehovah reigns!*

*Let the sea and its fullness roar; Let the field and all that is in it exult; Then the trees of the forest will sing for joy before Jehovah, for He is coming to judge the earth. Give thanks to Jehovah for He is good, and say "Save us, O God of our salvation; and gather us and deliver us out of the nations, that we may give thanks to Your holy name, that we may glory in Your praise. Blessed be Jehovah the God of Israel, from eternity to eternity.*

There is but one God... and His name is Jehovah. He is revealed in the Scriptures in three persons: Jehovah Abba Father (to all His children), Jehovah Lord Jesus Christ, and Jehovah Holy Spirit. We will look at the doctrine of the Trinity which is a divine mystery more closely in the future. Suffice it to say that the Creator has made us in His image with the desire to walk in us and move in this physical universe in sanctified mankind. Because of His intrinsic nature of being Eternal, He has created each individual person to likewise be eternal in spirit. This is where the dilemma exists. He has created us for relationship and intimacy with Him, and clearly:

**2 Peter 3:9...** *The Lord... is not willing that any should perish but that all should come to repentance.*

He has voted in our favor from eternity past and forever; the devil has voted against us because of his great hatred for all who now supersede him... and we have the deciding vote with respect to our eternal destiny. It is so pathetically sad how the enemy has deceived man to such an extent that so many enter eternity every day without knowing Jesus as Savior and Lord. Their eternal doom is sealed; there is no longer hope of salvation for them... they have chosen, albeit many inadvertently by their indecision to spend eternity in the lake of fire.

**2 Peter 2:9...** *The Lord knows how to deliver the godly out of trial and how to keep the unrighteous under punishment for the Day of Judgment.*

**Acts 17:30-32...** *Therefore, having overlooked the times of ignorance, God now charges all men everywhere to repent, because He has set a day in which He is to judge the world in righteousness by the man whom He has designated, having furnished proof to all by raising Him from the dead. And when they heard of a **resurrection of the dead**, some scoffed...*

This fantastic reality which is so mind-boggling that most cannot wrap their heads around it does sound unreal. I remember how it felt in my B.C. days- the whole premise of the Bible: Adam and Eve, the fall, the cross, Heaven, hell, **eternal judgment**... it all seemed too unbelievable to even consider. Until the Lord 'arrested' me, revealed Himself and His unfathomable love for me, and my resistance melted. I found the truth that I had been searching for in Christ. And yet even today I have such a crisis of consciousness in looking at **the elementary principle of eternal judgment**.

**Hebrews 9:27...** *It is appointed for men to die once, but after this **the judgment**.*

That one verse blows a gaping hole in the false teaching of reincarnation. It totally decimates the credibility of the Hindu religion and other New Age religions that promote a so-called cycle of life where one returns either higher or lower on the food chain. It is incomprehensible how such nonsense has multiplied millions of adherents. But when each of us stands before a Holy God, there will be no excuse.

**1 Peter 4:17...** *For the time has come for judgment to begin at the house of God, and if it begins with us first, what will be the end of those who do not obey the gospel of God?*

**2 Corinthians 5:9-11...** *Therefore we make it our aim... to be well pleasing to Him. For **we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ**, that each one may receive the things done in the body, according to what he has done, whether good or bad. **Knowing therefore the terror of the Lord, we persuade men...***

We who are privileged to know the truth, and do obey the gospel of God have the security of knowing that Heaven is our future home, and Mt. Zion, the New Jerusalem our residence when we all return to earth. Because of the atoning work of the cross of Calvary and the price that the Lord Jesus Christ paid for the blood-bought children of God we will not

Chapter 11- Eternal Judgment

suffer **eternal judgment**. But we will stand before Christ at His judgment seat. Paul speaking, develops the concept:

**1 Corinthians 3:9-15**... *For we are God's fellow workers; you are God's cultivated land, God's building. According to the grace of God given to me, as a wise master builder I have laid a foundation, and another builds upon it. But let each man take heed how he builds upon it. For another foundation no one is able to lay besides that which is laid, which is Jesus Christ. But if anyone builds upon the foundation gold, silver, precious stones, wood, grass, stubble, The work of each will become manifest; for **the day will declare it, because it is revealed by fire, and the fire itself will prove each one's work**, of what sort it is. If anyone's work which he has built upon the foundation remains, **he will receive a reward**; if anyone's work is consumed, he will suffer loss, but he himself will be saved, yet so as through fire.*

Again the salvation that we have received in Christ is not because of works, and is unchangeably eternal (**John 10:28; 17:2,3**). Those believers whose Christian works are not approved by the Lord, and therefore suffer loss of reward will still be saved. The Lord's reward to those believers whose Christian works are approved by Him is for the Kingdom age, and is something that each of us should strive for in gratitude for our salvation and daily blessings. The contrast in judgment of the lost is sobering.

**John 3:14-21**... *And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, so must the Son of Man be lifted up, **That everyone who believes in Him may have eternal life**. For God so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son, that everyone who believes in Him would not perish, but have eternal life. For God did not send the Son into the world to condemn the world, but that the world might be saved through Him.*

*He who believes in Him is not condemned, but **he who does not believe has been condemned already, because he has not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God**. And this is the condemnation, that the light has come into the world, and men loved darkness rather than the light, **for their works were evil. For everyone who practices evil hates the light, and does not come to the light, lest his work be reproved**. But he who does the truth comes to the light, that his works may be manifested that they are wrought in God.*

Although we looked at the two resurrections in the last chapter, let's look closely again at **The Great White Throne Judgment**. As stated earlier, each of us has an eternal spirit created by an Eternal God who in His infinite wisdom has given us free will. This free will does not contradict His sovereignty. He was, is, and always will be **omnipotent, omniscient, and omnipresent**. In His sovereignty and for as yet undetermined future benefit, he has given us the privilege of choice: the choice to receive or

reject God, the choice to believe or not believe the Bible and the Gospel message, and the choice to spend eternity in Heaven and in the restored earth... or to take up permanent residence in the **Lake of Fire**.

**Revelation 20:11-15**... *And I saw a great white throne, and Him who sat upon it, from whose face earth and heaven fled away, and no place was found for them. And I saw the dead, the great and the small, standing before the throne, and scrolls were opened; and another scroll was opened, which is **the Book of Life**. And the dead were judged by the things which were written in the scrolls, according to their works. And the sea gave up the dead which were in it, and death and Hades gave up the dead which were in them; **and they were judged**, each according to their works. And death and Hades were cast into **the Lake of Fire**.*

*This is therefore the second death, **the Lake of Fire**. And **if anyone was not found written in the Book of Life, he was cast into the Lake of Fire**.*

This is a horrific end of life that never ends! The Lake of Fire created for the devil and his angels becomes the place of eternal torment, agony, and separation from a Holy God. This is why we must share the gospel with the living while they are still drawing breath... once their breath is taken and their spirits leave their bodies, it's far too late.

## **Chapter12- The Foundational Principle of Ultimate Perfection**

**Hebrews 6:1(NKJV)...** *Therefore leaving the discussion of the elementary principles of Christ, **let us go on to perfection...***

This 'perfection' is **maturity, completion, wholeness**. In the discussion of elementary or foundational principles, this one is veiled- but is of utmost importance in the total development of what is considered by Scripture as **the basic understanding of the Christian faith**. This maturity and completion is the goal of the Father in each of us. It is our inexorable destiny. There are many passages in God's Word that encourage, challenge, and even command that we grow up... and not meaning grow old. My favorite is found in:

**Ephesians 4:11...** *And He Himself gave some as apostles and some as prophets and some as evangelists and some as shepherds [pastors] and teachers, **for the perfecting of the saints** unto the work of the ministry unto **the building up of the Body of Christ**, until we all arrive at the oneness of the faith and of the full knowledge of the Son of God, at a **full-grown man**, at **the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ...***

Pretty ambitious objective for each of us individually **and** corporately! **Full stature in Christ...** how awesome, how precious, how beautiful is that! We see in this passage that the building up of the Body of Christ is not accomplished directly by the ascension gift ministries given by our Lord, but by the saints who have been perfected by the 'gifted ones'. The Lord by His Spirit has impressed upon my heart what I consider a significant truth with respect to the five-fold ministry. Although there are definitely distinct individuals who walk in the office gifts of apostle, prophet, evangelist, pastor, and teacher- due to their maturity in their calling and appointment by the Lord... there is no lack of anointing for every member of the Body of Christ to walk in true five-fold ministry anointing.

In other words, you and I can 'exercise' the **apostolic anointing** when in maturity with humility we set things in order based upon the Word (line

upon line... precept upon precept). We can move with **prophetic anointing** when we share the Scriptures and the Lord 'quickens' a Rhema word for someone through us, or even gives us a prophetic word of edification, exhortation, comfort, or warning for that individual. Every believer should walk in the **evangelistic anointing** since we are to share the gospel freely as led by the Holy Spirit. We have the ministry of reconciliation (**2 Corinthians 5:19**) and God will reward us as we bring forth treasures out of darkness. As the high priest of the home, husbands and fathers exemplify those that need to have the **pastoral anointing** as 'shepherds' of their family. Clearly it is not the exclusive domain of men; since there are many women as well as men who not only in the home, but in their extended family, in the workplace, or even in school may have the platform and unction of the Holy Spirit to move in this precious anointing and call. The **teaching anointing** as far as I am concerned is across the board: our every action, word, and attitude 'teach' other not only about whom we are but hopefully model wholesome behavior and an attractive character that will bring praise to the Lord for the testimony of our daily lives.

Arriving at the **oneness of the faith** is not just about the act of our believing in the truth of God's revelation but also refers to the things in which we believe, specifically related to the divine person of Christ and His redemptive work. **The full knowledge of the Son of God** is the continuing process of apprehending the revelation concerning the Son of God for our personal experience. All minor doctrinal concepts that cause division are cast aside as we attain practical oneness and arrive at **a full-grown man, at the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ**.

So looking at the 7 foundational principles as a group we see that **repentance** is a turning away from **dead works** while **faith** involves entering **into God**. **Baptisms** are acts of separation from and the termination of negative things, with **resurrection power** working in us the life of Christ. The **laying on of hands** is both identification with and impartation of divine things. The **resurrection of the dead** is coming out of death into eternal life, while **eternal judgment** is the entering into eternity with our destiny sealed. And last but of utmost importance even in the context of the passage is **ultimate perfection**- the reaching for and attainment of the higher call.

**Philippians 3:8-15 (NKJV)...** *But indeed I also count all things loss for the excellence of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord... count them as rubbish, that I may gain Christ and be found in Him... that I may know Him and the power of His resurrection... but one thing I do, forgetting those things which are behind and reaching forward*

*to those things which are ahead, I press toward the goal for the prize of the upward call of God in Christ Jesus. Therefore let us, as many as are **mature**, have this mind...*

This verse complements well **Hebrews 12:1** concerning laying aside all the unnecessary 'weights' or things that encumber, as well as the sin that hinders our spiritual growth and strive for maturity and wholeness. As **1 Corinthians 13** encourages us to be perfected in love, we will not fully arrive at this ultimate perfection until we are transformed in the first resurrection. I love the way John puts it:

**1 John 3:1-3 (NKJV)**... *Behold what manner of love the Father has bestowed on us, that we should be called children of God! Therefore **the world does not know us, because it did not know Him**. Beloved, **now we are children of God**; and it has not yet been revealed what we shall be, but we know that when He is revealed, we shall be like Him, for we shall see Him as He is. And everyone who has this hope in Him purifies himself, just as He is pure.*

The world is ignorant of our being regenerated by God. Since it does not believe in the true and living God, it cannot fathom our being His children. It seems to the lost the height of arrogance to say that God is personally **our Father, and not theirs**. This is yet another reason why wisdom is necessary, working with the leading of the Holy Spirit in sharing our faith and defending it against the sewer system of darkness. In all humility we must firmly believe in their potential to get saved, just as we were. Because we are children of God, we will be like Him in maturity of life when He is come. We will not only have the divine nature as we now have; we will also bear the divine likeness of our Lord, which will be our greater blessing and enjoyment.

**Romans 8:16-23**... *The Spirit Himself witnesses with our spirit that we are children of God, and if children, heirs also; on the one hand, heirs of God; on the other, joint heirs with Christ, **if indeed we suffer with Him that we may also be glorified with Him**. For I consider that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the coming glory to be revealed upon us. For the anxious watching of the creation eagerly awaits the revelation of the sons of God.*

*For the creation was made subject to vanity, not of its own will, but because of Him who subjected it, In hope that **the creation itself will also be freed from the slavery of corruption into the freedom of the glory of the children of God**. For we know that the whole creation groans together and travails in pain together until now. And not only so, but we ourselves also, who have the firstfruits of the Spirit, even **we***

***ourselves groan in ourselves, eagerly awaiting sonship, the redemption of our body.***

Although we have the divine Spirit united with our spirit, our body has yet to be saturated with the divine life. Our body is still the flesh and is of the old creation. It is still subject to sin and death and is therefore missing the deeper things of God. We therefore groan together with all creation eagerly awaiting the day of glory when we will obtain the full sonship, our transfiguration including that of our body, when we will finally be freed from the slavery of corruption. The revelation of God in His Holy Scriptures gives us the progressive sequence of transformation that is destined to occur in His full recovery and restoration of a damaged planet. Between today and the return of our Lord Jesus Christ there will be simultaneous and parallel realities manifesting daily. The darkness will get ever darker, the depravity more entrenched in the children of satan, and cataclysmic changes will occur in the earth as it reels under the weight of corruption and decay. At the same time the church will continue to pulsate with a greater luminescence as His Presence comes in waves, and then eventually begins to abide in His Body. We will see and experience the fulfillment of:

***Isaiah 60:1-5... Arise! Shine! For your light has come, and the glory of Jehovah has risen upon you. For behold, the darkness will cover the earth, and deep darkness the peoples; But Jehovah will rise upon you, and His glory will be seen upon you. And nations will come to your light, and kings to the brightness of your rising, Lift up your eyes around you and see: They all gather together; they come to you; Your sons will come from far away, And your daughters will be carried on the hip. Then you will see and you will beam, And your heart will be in awe and will swell with joy, For the abundance of the sea will be turned to you, The wealth of the nations will come to you.***

This prophecy is being fulfilled 'as we speak'. The Fire of the Lord is coming upon His Body with manifestations. There are many places throughout the nations where miracles, signs, and wonders are following the ministry of God's Word. I believe this is both a beginning and an ending. There is a sense to this current outpouring that it may be a final contraction or birth pang, to what will be in the very near future **The Greatest Move of God in the history of mankind!** I agree with others in the greater Body of Christ that **the Lord will come to abide in and with His people.** There is a birthing in process- and it is a fulfillment of the cry of the Lord in:



**Matthew 6:9 (NKJV)... *Our Father in Heaven, Hallowed be Your name. Your Kingdom come. Your will be done on earth as it is in Heaven.***

**The Church Age** began with the resurrection of our Lord Jesus, followed closely by the outpouring of the Holy Spirit 40 days later at Pentecost. This set of events occurred about 30 A.D. I believe that the period of nearly two thousand years that have transpired since, has prepared a people and set the stage for the return of the Lord at the beginning of the **third day**, with the biblical understanding that a day to the Lord is as a thousand years, and a thousand years as a day.

**Luke 13:32... *And He [Jesus] said to them... 'Behold, I cast out demons and perform cures **today and tomorrow, and the third day I shall be perfected.**'***

**2 Peter 3:8-12... *But do not let this one thing escape you, beloved, **that with the Lord one day is like a thousand years and a thousand years like one day.** The Lord does not delay regarding the promise as some count delay, but is long-suffering toward you, not intending that any perish but that all advance to repentance.***

***But **the Day of the Lord will come as a thief**, in which the heavens will pass away with a roar, and the elements, burning with intense heat, will be dissolved, and the earth and the works in it will be burned up. Since all these things are to be thus dissolved, what kind of persons ought you to be in holy manner of life and godliness?, **Expecting and hastening the coming of the day of God...*****

Peter in the last section of this passage is alluding to the final transformation of our universe at the end of the Millennial Reign of Christ, which will be the transition to the perfect eternity future. So we see this sequence of events before us: Our light arising with the Lord's manifest Presence in increasing measure- amidst a darkening world; the return of the Lord with both the Rapture of the Church and the pouring out of God's wrath on a wicked world system culminating in the Battle campaign of Armageddon; the ushering in of a thousand year reign of our Lord Jesus Christ with a progressively restored planet bringing into reality a utopia of human existence; followed by a fully transformed universe entering into the joy of a perfect Eternity future. Let's look briefly at some possibilities of what life in the millennium Kingdom will be like.

## **The Ultimate Perfection of the Millennium Kingdom**

There will soon be a kingdom within a kingdom. The Kingdom of God has always been from Eternity past into the present moment, and continuing without interruption into Eternity future. Our God has always been sovereign. Since He never changes (**Malachi 3:6**) and has always been omnipotent, the Kingdom of Heaven is from everlasting to everlasting. On the other hand, the millennial reign of Christ is specifically a period of one thousand years from the return of the Lord Jesus Christ to earth until **the Great White Throne Judgment** at the end of the thousand years. The **Ultimate Perfection** of the Millennium Kingdom will be the Lord Jesus Christ Himself. Again it is very clear that our (that is mankind's) **ultimate perfection** will not be fully realized until Eternity future commences. Although there will be ever increasing 'perfection' of society and all other aspects of life on earth during the **third day Kingdom period**, there will still be billions of unregenerate people on planet earth by the end of the 1000 years. Each and every one will need to make a decision for Christ as an act of free will, even with Him continually present reigning on earth. If they choose to reject Christ's atoning sacrifice leading to salvation, they will be doomed and sent to perdition.

The Kingdom reign of Christ will immediately follow the cataclysmic world-wide devastation of the tribulation period culminating in the Battle of Armageddon. There will truly be a renaissance, a re-birth of this planet earth under the strong leadership of our King Jesus Christ. No one who has ever lived has known what it's like to live in a tension-free, harmonious world. Since satan is still loose there is always an underlying discord and melancholy that permeates existence no matter what our station in life. Humanity lives in fear of one another beset with daily struggles, rampaging nature, wars incessantly going on with their destruction in too many places, diseases of all kinds taking their toll, and people struggling continually to make ends meet. Famines, wars, pestilence, false religion, man's inhumanity to man... these are all the negative side of birth pangs of a brand new age which is about to be born. Thankfully the positive side of these birth pangs are souls coming into the Kingdom by the hundreds of thousands weekly all over the world. It is also the greater manifestation of signs and wonders, healings, dramatic deliverances, and the Holy Fear of the Lord coming upon both the church and the lost.

This tired and abused planet needs to be reborn also. Through the devastation that will occur to the entire planet during the great tribulation period, the entire earth will be 'plowed up' so to speak. With the world-wide earthquakes that will occur casting down all major structures,

removing entire islands, and leveling whole mountain ranges (**Revelation 16**)- there will be rearrangements of the planet's geography that will raise up large land areas of enormous proportions. All the earthquakes that will happen in a short span of time will also relieve the underground pressures that have built up over the past several thousand years. Vast amounts of ocean waters will penetrate the chasms created to cool the overheated core, which will then rise dramatically as steam and impact the atmosphere worldwide.

Some even postulate that the 22 degree tilt of our planet as well as the earth's wobble may be corrected by the hand of God at the beginning of the 1000 year reign of Christ. It could potentially stabilize earth weather patterns eliminating the extremes of climate that are hurricanes, typhoons, floods, blizzards, tornadoes, cyclones, droughts, and extremes of heat and cold. Imagine a period of time with pleasant weather patterns being the norm. With the hidden resources and treasures that have been submerged under the vast oceans of this present world, the new world can be rebuilt with great care and wise environmental stewardship like our original mandate in the Garden of Eden intended.

Millennial life will be an era of great purpose for all who are privileged to enter into it. The redeemed saints of the Lord will have positions of delegated authority to oversee all the work that will be necessary in the rehabilitation of planet earth. The supernatural Hand of God in the Person of our Lord Jesus Christ ruling and reigning over all the earth will be continually evident. But human endeavor will also be emphasized so that all of mankind will participate actively and in unity in making this gem of a planet into an ideal habitation for the Presence of God in all His creation. We will have the mind of Christ in our immortal bodies, never to experience mental fatigue, physical pain or aging, forgetfulness, nor any other malady of this fallen life. Assignments will be easy to accomplish. Progress will be saturated with God's grace during these many, many hundreds of years. Oh, the Joy!

Consider the fact that science currently states that humans alive today use about 7% of their brain potential. When we are transformed we will be able to utilize 100% of every physical and mental capacity without any friction or wear and tear. It is highly likely that during the Millennium science and technology will explode with magnificent inventions, and new technologies that will cover every facet of society and Kingdom life. Without thorns and thistles food production will be as its height of both efficiency and nutritional value. There won't be any pests requiring pesticides, and the new soil of vast new lands covering the surface of our planet will yield highly potent produce. The great beasts of the field will all

lose their ferocity and fear of man, and truly the lion will lay down with the lamb.

The incredible leap of science and technology that we have experience over the past 120 years (from horseback to space exploration; from the discovery of electricity to global telecommunications at your fingertips; etc.) will pale in comparison to what lies ahead during the Millennium. We have had great men of science who loved the Lord, great men and women who were fervent, praying Christians whose minds God illuminated to bring forth scientific discoveries that would bless mankind. Brilliant children of God like Johannes Kepler, Michael Faraday, Galileo, Blaise Pascal, Sir Isaac Newton, and so many others who would intersperse their writings and formulas with praises to the Lord, hymns, and prophetic insights! How much more will this occur when the veil is permanently removed from our mental faculties and we can think, meditate, and problem-solve without fatigue and with 100% recall.

The divine life that we as Christians will inherit in the resurrection will stimulate our minds to a level of intelligence that will make us capable of tackling all the problems that now confound the world's greatest minds today. There will be an unleashing of human creativity with the Spirit of wisdom and understanding flowing. Every area that our minds touch in the fields of communication, alternative energy, health, transportation, agriculture, the arts, and education- will cause quantum leaps in practical and tangible results to manifest. For example: all matter is energy packed. We will see it unlocked to provide unlimited pollution-free power. There will be silent, pollution-free, yet optimally efficient propulsion in an ecological utopia where every region will look green and lush, beautifully designed to give praise the Lord. There will be no overcrowding even though the potential population of planet earth at the end of the Millennium could be somewhere approaching 30-40 billion people. Think of how... much smaller bodies of water; not 2/3's of the planet covered in water. Greater land masses with ideal climate, and death being a rarity of punishment.

**Isaiah 65:20...** *There will no longer be in her an infant who reaches the age of only a few days Nor an old man who does not fill up his days; **For the lad will die at a hundred years of age, and the sinner, being a hundred years of age, will be cursed.***

We who are alive today, on this side of the Millennium- are already approaching the crest of several major technological waves: nanotechnology (see **J. Storrs Hall's** outstanding book ***Nanofuture***), biotechnology with its emerging cures for chronic diseases, and the rather

mystical field of electromagnetic energy. Take all the advances we will see before the Lord's return in these and other cutting edge fields of discovery and innovation, and multiple them by a factor of 10, and then again, and again... and you will still only scratch the surface of what we will experience during that exhilarating time of existence that will be the millennial reign of Christ.

**1 Corinthians 2:9,10 (NKJV)... *But as it is written: "Eye has not seen, nor ear heard, Nor have entered into the heart of man the things which God has prepared for those who love Him." But God has revealed them to us through His Spirit. For the Spirit searches all things, yes, [even] the deep things of God.***

Righteousness will predominate during the Millennium because satan will be bound, the Holiness of God will be a primary focus influencing all aspects of society, and the Lord Jesus Christ will rule with a firm hand as the ever-present King of His Kingdom.

**Habakkuk 2:14... *For the earth will be filled with the knowledge of the glory of [the Lord] as water covers the seas.***



**Chapter 13- When Zion Travails, She Brings Forth Children:  
The Zion Company**

**Isaiah 66:7-9...** *Before she travailed, she brought forth; Before her pain came, She gave birth to a man. Who has heard of such a thing? Who has seen such things? Can a land be born in one day? **Or can a nation be brought forth all at once? For as soon as Zion travailed, She brought forth her children.** Shall I bring to the point of birth and not cause to bring forth? Says Jehovah. Or shall I who cause to bring forth shut the womb? Says your God.*

This chapter of Isaiah presents the Heart of God concerning His desire for a permanent habitation. God did not consider either Heaven (*My throne*) or earth (*the footstool for My feet*) as His dwelling place. He also did not consider the temple built by the children of Israel as the lasting place of His rest. The tabernacle of Moses in the wilderness and the temple of Solomon were symbolic of Jehovah's union with Israel whom God considered His actual house. God was united with the children of Israel both in marriage and in His Presence united with them, and this one entity was a spiritual house in which both God and the godly children of Israel lived.

The dwelling place God desires now is a group of people into whom He can enter and remain. His divine intention is and has always been to have a dwelling place in the universe where He as God and a righteous mankind are mingled together- God built into man and man built into God, so that both God and man can be a mutual abode for each other. **In the New Testament this dwelling place is the church**, which is God's habitation in the believers' spirit, with the ultimate manifestation of this being the New Jerusalem, the **Zion of God**.

**Ephesians 2:19-22...** *So then you are no longer strangers and sojourners, but you are fellow citizens with the saints and members of the household of God, **Being built upon the foundation of apostles and prophets, Christ Jesus Himself being the cornerstone;** In whom all the building, being fitted together, is growing into a holy temple in the Lord; **In whom you also are being built together into a dwelling place of God in spirit.***

Isaiah the prophet spoke prophetically in multiple layers of future events that continue to unfold. The primary fulfillment of the particular quoted passage of **Isaiah 66** in this remarkable book of Holy Writ, is the rebirth of the nation of Israel. A nation that had not existed for nearly two millennia was reborn in one day- on May 14, 1948. She was immediately attacked by five surrounding armies of Moslem nations- all whom she soundly defeated, because Jehovah's hand was upon her to protect her from permanent harm. This single event of fulfilled prophecy has set a clock ticking... it is the **End of Days** clock, for all other prophecies that remain to manifest in fulfillment, find their center in this remarkable act of divine intervention. There is a parallel fulfillment to **natural Israel**... which is in **spiritual Israel** or the Church: the birthing of **the Zion Company**. We are the children of Abraham by faith, and therefore likewise heirs to the promises bestowed on the natural seed (**Romans 4:11-25**).

**Galatians 3:7,29...** *Know then that they who are of faith, these are sons of Abraham... And if you are of Christ, then you are Abraham's seed, heirs according to promise.*

This chapter is positioned at the end of the section on the foundational or elementary principles of Christ, because it is directly related to **let us go on to perfection**, which was addressed in Chapter 12. There has been a progressive restoration of genuine Spirit-filled realities in the Church since **the Reformation** initiated nearly 500 years ago by Martin Luther. For a thorough review of each facet of change that has occurred by God's Sovereign Hand in these five centuries, please see the writings of **Dr. Bill Hamon**- specifically ***The Eternal Church; Prophets and the Prophetic Movement***; and most recently ***The Day of The Saints***. All of Dr. Hamon's books and resources are worthy of serious study, and will impact your Christian walk and knowledge immeasurably. Please visit the website- [www.christianinternational.org](http://www.christianinternational.org).

As has been decreed from the beginning of this book, and that which has likewise been declared in the mouths of the Apostles and Prophets who are alive and well today- we are experiencing the most profound transition in God's economy for the completion of all things. The Church of the Living God is being transformed by accessing and living out a Kingdom mentality into reality. We are truly **Advancing Christ's Kingdom** step by step... line upon line... precept upon precept.

Please see my blog at [zionsgate.wordpress.com](http://zionsgate.wordpress.com). There is a remarkable unity of declaration that is going forth into the atmosphere from all the vital streams of the Body of Christ. Men and women and even children are



Chapter 13- The Zion Company

receiving visions and dreams that confirm that the destiny that our Heavenly Father has ordained for the manifestation of the sons of God- **the Zion Company**- will not be delayed any longer. The time is short and we have much to do to prepare the nets (doctrinal purity with spiritual unity) to be able to take into the Kingdom the multitudes that will come during the coming magnificent Harvest at the End of the Age. Once it starts, it will continue until the Lord Jesus Christ sets His foot on the Mount of Olives, and it splits two ways forging the channel for a river of God's purpose to flow.

### The Mystery that is Zion

In the entire Bible, the whole counsel of God's revelation to man that is the sealed canon of Scripture- there are **162 references to Zion**. There are **155** in the Old Testament, with **7** in the New Testament. A large number of these scripture references are describing physical (temporal) Jerusalem, or a district of the Holy City, or the peak of Mt. Hermon. My focus is on **spiritual Zion** rather than the others. One of my very favorite passages of Scripture is comprehensive in its description of **blessed Zion**:

**Hebrews 12:22-29...** *But you have come forward to Mt. Zion and to the city of the living God, **the heavenly Jerusalem**; and to myriads of angels, to the universal gathering; And to the church of the firstborn, who have been enrolled in Heaven; and to God, the Judge of all; and to spirits of righteous men who have been made perfect; And to Jesus, the Mediator of a new covenant; and to the blood of sprinkling, which speaks something better than that of Abel... we shall not escape who turn away from Him who warns from Heaven...*

*...v26... Whose voice at the time shook the earth but now has promised, saying, "Yet once more I will shake not only the earth but also Heaven." And this word, "Yet once more," shows clearly the removal of the things being shaken as being of things having been made, **that the things which are not shaken may remain. Therefore receiving an unshakable Kingdom, let us have grace, through which we may serve God well-pleasingly with piety and [godly] fear; For our God is also a consuming fire.***

I purposely set the positive beauty of the above verses of Scripture- since **Mt. Zion** represents the blessings of God's grace- before the contrast of the negatives related to the terror of Mt. Sinai which represents the futility of the law. In **Hebrews 12:18-21** there is:

*... a mountain which could not be touched... which was set on fire, and to darkness and gloom and whirlwind...v21... And so fearful was the sight, Moses said, "I am full of fear and trembling."*

What is described in **vv. 22-24** is heavenly and spiritual, in contrast to the earthly physical things in **vv. 18-19**. The positive verses point to the side of grace where we the firstborn of the church- though not yet in Heaven are 'enrolled' there, for that is where our citizenship is (**Philippians 3:20,21**). Everything described on the side of the law which is the old covenant is not pleasant but terrifying. While everything on the side of grace is wonderfully pleasing, inspiring, and full of hope. Mt. Zion and the heavenly Jerusalem, which are God's habitation and throne of universal administration, are what we have been drawn to. The multitude of holy angels are present in the celebration of the heirs of salvation to whom they minister (**Hebrews 1:14**). God the Father is present in **v23** as Judge of all, who justifies the righteous saints of the old covenant because of their faith (**Hebrews 11**). Our dear Lord Jesus is confirmed in **v24** as the Mediator of a new covenant better in every regard compared to the old covenant of continual bloodshed and sacrifice of animals, whose temporary atonement only pointed to Christ. Who would be so foolish as to leave the side of grace and turn to the works of the law? This again requires **repentance from dead works and faith toward God**.

We who are co-heirs with Christ of the Kingdom which our Father is well-pleased to give us, must live daily in the reality of **vv. 28,29**: *Therefore **receiving an unshakable kingdom** (a continual process of receiving), **let us have grace** (fixing our eyes upon Jesus, the source and fountain of grace), **through which we may serve God well-pleasingly with piety** (holiness) **and [godly] fear** (the holy reverential fear of the Lord); **For our God is also a consuming fire.***

We have already discussed the fire that will burn up all our works at the Judgment Seat of Christ, with gold and precious stones remaining, typifying our eternal treasures laid up in Heaven. We will look in depth at **the Holy Fear of the Lord** in the sequel to this work to be entitled **Cleansing the Temple**. Suffice it to say that the fear of the Lord is truly the beginning of wisdom (**Proverbs 1:7**). Let us contemplate how our Almighty God views the confusion and rebellion of humanity, who reflect the nature of their father, the god of this world system- which lies in the lap of satan (**2 Corinthians 4:3,4; 1 John 5:19**).

**Psalm 2:1-12(entire)**... *Why are the nations in an uproar, And why do the peoples contemplate a vain thing? The kings of the earth take their stand, And the rulers sit in counsel together, Against Jehovah and against*

Chapter 13- The Zion Company

*His Anointed: Let us break apart their bonds and cast their ropes away from us. **He who sits in the heavens laughs; The Lord has them in derision.***

*Then He will speak to them in His anger, And in His burning wrath he will terrify them: **But I have installed My King Upon Zion, My holy mountain.** I will recount the decree of Jehovah; He said to Me: You are My Son; Today I have begotten You. **Ask of Me, And I will give you the nations as Your inheritance And the limits of the earth as Your possession.** You will break them with an iron rod; You will shatter them like a potter's vessel. Now therefore, O kings, be prudent; Take the admonition, O judges of the earth. **Serve Jehovah with fear, And rejoice with trembling. Kiss the Son lest He be angry and you perish from the way; for His anger may suddenly be kindled. Blessed are all those who take refuge in Him.***

God the Father proclaims that He has installed His King in Mt. Zion, not Mt. Sinai. That again is because Mt. Sinai produces children of slavery under the law, but the New Jerusalem above- which is in Heaven at Mt. Zion, produces children of promise who inherit the promised blessing of the indwelling Holy Spirit. We kiss the Son because we love Him and desire to enjoy Him. We take refuge in Him as our protection and hiding place, in a world full of darkness and wicked ways. Here is found comfort for us through all tribulation, for we can claim and rest upon His word, and the many promises of Scripture concerning our glorious future.

**Psalm 9:11...** *Sing psalms to Jehovah, **the inhabitants of Zion**; Declare His deeds among the peoples...*

Because our citizenship is in Heaven (**Philippians 3:20**) and we are seated in Heavenly places in Christ Jesus (**Ephesians 2:6**) we are inspired to declare His deeds among all people. This is how we overcome the adversary: By the blood of the Lamb and the word of our testimony (**Revelation 12:11**).

**Psalm 20:1,2...** *May Jehovah answer you in the day of trouble; May the name of the God of Jacob set you on high. May He send you help from the sanctuary, And **support you from Zion.***

This is the channel of blessing and answered prayer that you see both in the dream of Jacob's ladder (**Genesis 28:11-22**) and referred to by our Lord in **John 1:51**. Our prayers, petitions, and supplications ascend to God like fragrant incense and He wisely responds in His perfect will and timing. We have the comfort of knowing that He answers either yes, no, or wait... for He as a faithful Father knows how to care for all His children.

**Psalm 48:1-3;12-14...** *Great is Jehovah, And much to be praised In the city of our God, In His holy mountain. Beautiful in elevation, The joy of the whole earth, Is **Mount Zion**, the sides of the north, The city of the great King. God has made Himself known In her palaces as a high retreat... Walk about **Zion**, and go around her; Count her towers. Consider carefully her bulwarks; Pass between her palaces; That you may recount it to the generation following. **For this God is our God forever and ever. He will guide us even unto death.***

**Zion** was the city of David (**2 Samuel 5:7**) and the center of the city of Jerusalem where the temple as God's dwelling place was built. In the spiritual sense **Zion within Jerusalem** is a type of the body of overcoming believers who are the perfected mature sons and daughters of God, within the church. It represents the universal church perfected with the references to palaces alluding to the different aspects or streams of the church. When the church as the house of God is enlarged and strengthened, it becomes the city-- the Kingdom for God's ruling and reigning. As both the house and the city we enjoy God in the aspect of His dwelling, and in His ruling and reigning.

**Psalm 50:1,2...** *The Mighty One, God Jehovah, Speaks and summons the earth From the rising of the sun to its setting. **Out of Zion, the perfection of beauty, God shines forth.***

This beautifully refers again to the mystery of our Triune God's economy-- that He has chosen to redeem, regenerate, transform, and eventually glorify the children of mankind whom He has called out of the world. **We are that Zion out of whom God shines forth! WE are the Zion Company!** One of my favorite passages is:

**Isaiah 2:2-4 (NKJV)...** *Now it shall come to pass in **the latter days** That **the mountain of the Lord's house** Shall be established on the top of the mountains, And shall be exalted above the hills; And all nations shall flow to it. Many people shall come and say, "Come and let us go to the mountain of the Lord, To the house of the God of Jacob; **He will teach us His ways, And we shall walk in His paths.**" For **out of Zion** shall go forth the law, And the word of the Lord from Jerusalem. He shall judge between the nations, And shall rebuke many people; They shall beat their swords into plowshares, And their spears into pruning hooks; Nation shall not lift up sword against nation, **Neither shall they learn war anymore.***

Israel has always been the navel of the earth, and Jerusalem the center of worship. God's temple with the Shekinah Presence of Jehovah above the Mercy Seat at the Ark of the Covenant was situated there. Soon when

Chapter 13- The Zion Company

the New Jerusalem descends from Heaven and the Lord Jesus assumes His rightful throne, all nations will come three times a year to be taught of the Lord at **Mt. Zion**. He will rule the nations with a firm hand; His every word will be law- and His correction will be severe yet just and righteous. The earth will experience a lasting peace that it and mankind have yearned for since the Fall poisoned all creation.

**Isaiah 4:5,6...** *Jehovah will create over the entire region of **Mount Zion** and over all her convocations a cloud of smoke by day, and the brightness of a fiery flame by night; **for the glory will be a canopy over all**. And there will be a tabernacle as a daytime shade from the heat and as a refuge and cover from storm and rain.*

Just as the Lord's Presence was with Israel in the wilderness wanderings as a cloud by day (**Exodus 13:21**) and a pillar of fire by night (**Zechariah 2:5**), so His Glory will be a covering for His holy people at **Mt. Zion**. The light of His Glory will illuminate so that no other source of light will be needed (**Revelation 21:23**).

**Isaiah 52:7...** *How beautiful on the mountains Are the feet of him who brings good news, Of him who announces peace, who brings news of good things, Who announces salvation; Of him who says to **Zion, Your God reigns!***

What a profound privilege and responsibility we the children of the ever living God have! We know the ultimate truth, the mystery of God's economy which has been hidden in plain sight both in the Holy Scriptures and in particular in the redeemed! We carry the Kingdom of Heaven wherever we go. Wherever we are the Kingdom can and should manifest by the release of the Spirit through us to touch the lives of others. The world wallows in despair with cynical fear of a doomed future. Or lost mankind searches for truth and becomes satisfied with the crumbs of false religion that will not save, and in fact will damn them to hell and the Lake of Fire.

The underlying reason that this book has been written is so the Body of Christ will fully awaken from slumber and procrastination, rise up with God's radiance and push back the darkness. We must win the lost at any cost! We must sacrificially invest ourselves, our time, our money, in snatching as many out of the fire as we can... as long as we are drawing breath. God commands us to compel them to come into His house. When we stand before God at the Judgment Seat of Christ, He will need to see our fruitful treasures... the many souls that have entered His Kingdom by our direct or indirect witness. That is the only thing we will carry into

Heaven with us; everything else will be stripped away. We have the commission and empowerment to do this:

**Matthew 28:18-20...** *And Jesus came and spoke to them, saying, All authority has been given to Me in heaven and on earth. **Go therefore and disciple all the nations**, baptizing them into the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, **Teaching them to observe all things that I have commanded you.** And behold, I am with you all the days until the consummation of the age.*

We have no excuse because we are fully equipped. We have the very Word of God in the Holy Scriptures; the armor of God; the fruit and gifts of the Spirit manifesting in our daily lives; the five-fold ministry anointing; Christian broadcast television, radio, and print media; and now the ever-growing influence of the Internet that we can harness in increasing measure for God's purposes. There has never been a season in human history where more is available for our use to expand the Kingdom of our Lord Jesus Christ. All we need to do is show up... He will provide the rest. Of course the prerequisites that should go without saying are:

**1 Timothy 1:5...** *The goal of our instruction is love from a pure heart, a clear conscience, and a sincere faith.*

All of our efforts must be bathed in prayer with fasting when necessary to effect the changes that the Lord wants and eagerly anticipates. The redeemed are continually to act as midwives facilitating the rebirth of souls into the Kingdom. We plant the seed of the Word, cover it before and after with loving prayer, and observe the Holy Spirit do the rest. Of course, we then have the added responsibility in order to fulfill the Great Commission, to disciple the babes in Christ with the milk and eventually the meat of the Scriptures. Then we can all look forward to our glorious future in **Mount Zion**:

**Revelation 21:1-7...** *And I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had passed away. Also there was no more sea. Then I saw the holy city, **New Jerusalem [Mt. Zion]**, coming down out of heaven from God, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband. And I heard a loud voice from heaven saying, "Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and He will dwell with them, and they shall be His people, and God Himself will be with them and be their God. And God will wipe away every tear from their eyes; there shall be no more death, nor sorrow, nor crying; and there shall be no more pain, for the former things have passed away."*

Chapter 13- The Zion Company

*Then He who sat on the throne said, "**Behold, I make all things new.**" And He said to me, "Write, for these words are true and faithful." And He said to me, "**It is done! I am the Alpha and the Omega, the Beginning and the End. I will give of the fountain of the water of life freely to him who thirsts. He who overcomes shall inherit all things and I will be his God and he shall be My son...**"*

**Yes and Amen!... so be it, in Jesus' Name.**





*Part III:*

*Advancing Christ's Kingdom*



## ***Chapter 14- Christ's Kingdom According to the Scriptures***

One of the most profound truths revealed in the Scriptures is the reality of the Kingdom of Heaven. The Eternal Kingdom of God that transcends space and time is truly from everlasting to everlasting. With respect to the race of man, the children of Adam- those who are blood-bought heirs of salvation look forward to an idyllic earth realm with the Lord Jesus Christ as the reigning monarch over all the nations of this restored planet. His Kingdom is inevitable since He has already won the title deed to this 'small' piece of property when He declared **it is finished** on Calvary's cross. Those who have been blessed to discern the future ponder the likelihood of this earth being the launching pad for redeemed humanity in space exploration and the colonization of far flung planetary systems that will accommodate an ever-expanding race of glorified beings.

Being an American raised in a democracy where the emphasis is the rule of the people through representative government, it is difficult to grasp and fully comprehend the implications of living in a future kingdom. Secular history as well as the record of God's Word reveal the power exercised by rulers of different kingdoms in diverse cultures. Lord Acton said, "Power corrupts; absolute power corrupts absolutely." Our world history testifies to that sad reality with many rulers being ruthless and corrupt, while a smaller number have been benevolent to their people. The contrast between King Arthur and Genghis Khan is radical. Likewise the reign of King David compared to King Saul clearly shows the importance of the attitude of the heart. Yet no earthly king or kingdom will compare to the imminent Kingdom of our Lord Jesus Christ. It is **the Advancing Kingdom**, the unrelenting, ever-expanding, inexorable Kingdom... **Hallelujah!** Truly the knowledge of the glory of the Lord and His realm will cover the earth (**Habakkuk 2:14**) and in ultimate reality will be the beginning of His universal empire in this physical universe.

The gospel of **Matthew** presents Jesus as the prophesied Messiah, and also as King of the universe. The phrase **kingdom of heaven** appears 32 times in Matthew, but nowhere else in the New Testament. To show that Jesus fulfills all the qualifications for the Messiah, Matthew quotes more Old Testament Scripture- about 130 references and allusions- than any

other book of the Bible. The phrase ***that what was spoken through the prophet might be fulfilled*** appears 9 times in Matthew and not once in the other three gospels. In order to begin to internalize the mysteries of the Kingdom and walk as royal emissaries in the earth, we will look closely at the portrait of our King Jesus painted in the **Gospel of Matthew**.

As has been stated the Kingdom of which Christ is King is composed of Abraham's descendants- according to the flesh and by faith. Of all those listed in the Lord Jesus Christ's two genealogies (**Matthew 1** and **Luke 3**), Abraham, David, and Mary were the three individuals ultimately critical to bringing forth Christ. Abraham represents a life lived out by faith; David- a life dealt by the cross; and Mary - a life of absolute submission to the Lord. Jesus is called "the son of David, the son of Abraham" in the very first verse of chapter 1. He had to fulfill two functions: as the son of David, the prophetic kingly line, and as the son of Abraham, the priestly line. As the son of David He is to be like Solomon who uttered profound words of wisdom and built the holy temple of the Lord. Our Lord Jesus spoke more profound truth than Solomon, and He is building a spiritual temple via the Holy Spirit. In typifying the son of Abraham He is to be like Isaac who was offered on the altar of sacrifice at the command of Jehovah yet lived, and he married Rebecca who was not Hebrew. Likewise Jesus was offered on the cross by the will of God, and through His death and resurrection has entered into marriage with His church (the called out ones) formed of both Jews and Gentiles.

Of note in the genealogy of Matthew is the mention of four women. In the Old Testament there is no genealogy that registers a woman, it's always "the son of so and so"... while here we find not only women but four who were all Gentiles. Tamar was the daughter in law of Judah with whom she committed the sin of incest. Rahab of Jericho was a harlot. Ruth was a Moabite, a nation that was forbidden to enter the assembly of the Lord (**Deuteronomy 23:3**). And although Bathsheba is not mentioned by name, she is referred to as the wife of Uriah the Hittite with whom David the king committed adultery. These references are designed I believe to give every non-Jewish believer hope and confidence in God's love, forgiveness, and acceptance in His family.

The reliability and accuracy of the Bible as the word of God has been mentioned earlier with the strong challenge and encouragement for both the skeptic and the student of Scripture to delve deeply into the provable inerrancy of the Holy Bible. The writings of Josh McDowell, Lee Strobel, and Dr. Gleason Archer are just a few of the multitude of books in Christian Apologetics that very clearly and systematically prove the case

for faith in God's revealed truth. This understanding is so important for without it the enemy will continually seed doubt in our hearts as we attempt to ponder the exposition of the Word. It is of paramount importance that we understand the need for a Messiah, and from that premise come to realize in our study that the Lord Jesus Christ is the only candidate in human history that could have and did fulfill every one of the several hundred prophecies concerning the person of the Messiah.

Before we can recognize the rightful throne of the Lord Jesus Christ we must come to the understanding of the irrefutable nature of this truth. The so-called liberal Christian church is shipwrecked due to their lack of faithful understanding of the Word, and the serious lack of personal study that perpetuates not only ignorance but misguided erroneous interpretation. There is no credibility in the statement of any truth without confidence, and one cannot have confidence if all he rests his faith on is pithy platitudes and wishful thinking. Taking just 21 of the several hundred prophecies concerning the Messiah fulfilled in the historical person of Jesus of Nazareth, we'll briefly consider the statistical probability in an understandable manner:

1. Birthplace- Bethlehem (compare **Micah 5:2 w/ Matthew 2:1**)
2. Born of a virgin (**Isaiah 7:14 w/ Matthew 1:18-23**)
3. Tribe of Judah (**Genesis 49:10 w/ Hebrews 7:14**)
4. Would be in and come out of Egypt (**Hosea 11:1 w/ Matthew 2:13-15**)
5. Rejected by His own (**Psalm 69:8; Isaiah 53:3 w/ John 1:10,11; 19:15**)
6. Betrayed by a friend (**Psalm 41:9; 55:12-14 w/ John 13:18,26**)
7. Betrayal price- 30 pieces of silver (**Zechariah 11:12 w/ Matthew 26:14-16**)
8. Silver purchased potter's field (**Zechariah 11:13 w/ Matthew 27:3-7**)
9. Beaten and spat upon (**Isaiah 50:6 w/ Matthew 26:67**)
10. Struck with a rod (**Micah 5:1 w/ Matthew 27:30**)
11. Forsaken by His followers (**Zechariah 13:7 w/ Matthew 26:31,56**)
12. Manner of His death (**Zechariah 12:10 w/ John 19:18,34**)
13. Wounded hands and feet (**Psalm 22:16 w/ John 20:25,27**)
14. Died among criminals (**Isaiah 53:9,12 w/ Mark 15:27,28**)
15. Buried with the rich (**Isaiah 53:9 w/ Matthew 27:57-60**)
16. Persecutors mocked him (**Psalm 22:7,8 w/ Matthew 27:39-44**)

17. His cry of agony- the exact words (**Psalm 22:1 w/ Matthew 27:46**)
18. Given vinegar and gall to drink (**Psalm 69:21 w/ John 19:18-30**)
19. His clothing divided by casting lots (**Psalm 22:18 w/ John 19:23,24**)
20. None of His bones would be broken (**Psalm 34:20 w/ John 19:36**)
21. His body would not decompose in the tomb (**Hosea 6:2; Psalm 16:10 w/ Acts 2:30,31**)

If one were to take just eight of these recognized occurrences in the life of Christ and statistically analyze the likelihood of one person in history fulfilling these prophecies concerning the Messiah, it would be like laying silver dollars across the state of Texas with only one marked in red and then expecting a blind-folded person to find that one coin on the very first attempt. Taking 48 of the known prophecies of the Messiah fulfilled in Christ Jesus would be a number that far exceeds human comprehension: it's 10 to the 157th power to 1-which if represented by atoms would be more than enough to fill the entire known universe! (see the tract **Holy Bible- Wholly True** by Winkie Pratney). It would be clear to any sincere truth seeker investigating the claims of Christ that **Jesus is the Messiah**.

The Old Testament Scriptures give many glimpses of the deity and majesty of the Messiah. The Trinity is also revealed showing that God is a plural being though only one God, who is eternally existent. **Elohim**, the plural form of **EI**- one of God's names, is found throughout the Holy Scriptures preceding the New Testament. In the very first chapter of **Genesis (1:26)** God declares "**Let Us make man in Our image, according to Our likeness...**" In the New Testament the writers clearly spoke of the deity of Jesus Christ and His preeminence. He is identified as the Creator of the universe (**John 1:1-14; Colossians 1:16**), God manifested in the flesh (**1 Timothy 3:16**), and as our Holy Lord and Savior (**Titus 1:1-4**). In the supernatural acts of healing the sick, resurrecting the dead, feeding five thousand men plus women and children with a small boy's lunch, and defying the laws of gravity by walking on water, the Lord Jesus demonstrated His authority over the laws of His own creation and thereby revealed His divine nature.

In **Matthew 1** the miraculous birth of Jesus is described, and then it states in:

**vv22,23... Now all this has happened so that what was spoken by the Lord through the prophet might be fulfilled, saying, Behold, the virgin shall be with child and shall bear a son, and they shall call His name Emmanuel (which is translated, God with us).** In just one verse the false teaching of the Jehovah's Witnesses is wiped out. Jesus was, is, and always will be **God with us**.

In **Matthew 2** we see the magi or wise men from the east coming to Jerusalem...

*v2... Saying, Where is He who has been born **King of the Jews**? For we saw His star at its rising and have come to worship Him.*

Here we find that the very first people who sought the Lord were Gentiles, who declare Jesus as King of the Jews. This clearly shows that Christ's redemptive work is for both Jews and Gentiles, an all inclusive gift and offer of salvation... to those who receive it. In **Matthew 3** we see the coming of John the Baptist which we discussed in a previous chapter concerning the baptism of Christ, but what bears repeating is the revelation of the Trinity which again refutes and discredits the teaching of the Jehovah's Witnesses.

*vv16,17... And having been baptized **Jesus** went up immediately from the water, and behold, the heavens were open to Him, and He saw **the Spirit of God** descending like a dove and coming upon Him. And behold, **a voice** out of the heavens, saying, **This is My Son, the Beloved, in whom I have found my delight.***

As a type of death, burial, and resurrection, the Lord's water baptism by John, is immediately followed by the baptism in the Holy Spirit (the dove descending) which initiated the Kingdom of Heaven touching earth, opening access to the Kingdom to all believers. The baptism of the Holy Spirit on the day of Pentecost revealed in **Acts 2** established the Kingdom with the people entering in through salvation and empowerment by His Holy Spirit. This could never have happened if Christ had not fulfilled the requirement of the law in taking our punishment upon Himself on the cross.

The declaration of the Father in **Matthew 3:17 NKJV... This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased** is allowed by the Father to be challenged by the adversary. There is a sudden turn of events from the pleasant scene at the Jordan River to a heated battle with satan himself who attacks Christ on this very assertion:

***Matthew 4:1,2... Then Jesus was led up into the wilderness by the Spirit to be tempted by the devil. And when He had fasted forty days and forty nights, afterward He became hungry.***

The enemy comes to Him saying over and over again in each temptation **'If You are the Son of God...'** which reveals that **the devil will always challenge the very word of God to us**. He continually wants to strip

from us the confidence of having heard the word of the Lord and the affirmation of God's love for our individual lives. The lesson here is that victory is only secured when we respond with the word of Scripture as our sword of truth: We rely on what God has declared and not on human wisdom nor carnal reasonings. The devil's temptation of Adam and Eve concerned eating of the forbidden fruit (**Genesis 3:1-6**). His temptation of the second Adam, Jesus Christ also concerned eating by turning stones into bread. Jesus wisely responded by taking the word of God as His bread to sustain Him:

*v4... But He answered and said, It is written, Man shall not live on bread alone, but on every word that proceeds out through the mouth of God.*

In the subsequent temptations the adversary resorts to the same methodology that gave him success in the Garden of Eden. But the word says:

**1 John 2:16,17 NKJV...** *For all that is in the world- **the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life**- is not of the Father but is of the world.*

The world is against the **Father**, the devil is against the **Son (1 John 3:8)**, and the flesh is against the **Spirit (Galatians 5:17)**. Therefore we see in **Matthew 4** the newly anointed King confronted satan's temptations not relying on His own word but by the word of the Holy Scriptures. Because of His victory over the enemy's temptation, He went into the wilderness filled with the Holy Spirit, and came back empowered by the Holy Spirit for Kingdom ministry (see **Luke 4:1&14**).

**Matthew 4:16,17...** *The people sitting in darkness have seen a great light; and to those sitting in the region and shadow of death, to them light has risen. **From that time Jesus began to proclaim and to say, Repent, for the Kingdom of Heaven has drawn near.***

The King's ministry for the Kingdom of Heaven did not begin with earthly pomp and power but with heavenly light, which was the King Himself as the light of life shining to those living in the shadow of death... fallen humanity. In this chapter we also see that His ministry did not start in Jerusalem the capital and center of religious worship, but by the sea of Galilee where He began to recruit followers- initially fishermen who would cease to catch fish, but would become **fishers of men (v19)**. All true followers of the Lord will become fishers of men. If anyone who is saved fails to lead others to Christ, he has not obeyed the Lord, for He has said explicitly, **"I will make you fishers of men."**



**Matthew 4:23-25...** *And Jesus went about in all of Galilee, teaching in their synagogues and proclaiming **the gospel of the Kingdom** and healing every disease and every sickness among the people. And the report concerning Him went out into all of Syria; and they brought to Him all who were ill, those afflicted with various diseases and torments and those possessed by demons and epileptics and paralytics; and He healed them. And great crowds followed Him from Galilee and Decapolis and Jerusalem and Judea and from beyond the Jordan.*

In the book of **Matthew** the gospel is referred to as **the gospel of the Kingdom**. This "good news" includes not only the forgiveness of sins, but also the power to cast out demons and heal diseases, the impartation of eternal life, and access to the Kingdom of Heaven in all its fullness. What follows is the King's unveiling and declaration of **the constitution of the Kingdom**, enunciating the principles of the **Kingdom of Heaven**. We will study this carefully verse by verse since this is the most important part of my effort in writing about fully entering into Kingdom Life.

**Matthew 5:1,2...** *And when He saw the crowds, **He went up to the mountain**. And after He sat down, **His disciples came to Him**. And opening His mouth, **He taught them**, saying...*

It is critical to note that although there were multitudes of people, only His disciples followed our Lord up the mountain. Although it is likely that many overheard what was said, He is speaking directly to His disciples primarily. Although it is a hard truth, it is confirmed further on in **Matthew 13:11** where it clearly states:

*...And He answered and said to them, **Because to you it has been given to know the mysteries of the Kingdom of Heaven, but to them it has not been given.***

Although initially Christ's disciples were all Jews, it is important to know that from **Matthew to Acts** whenever a **Jew or Gentile** believed in the Lord Jesus, he or she was called a disciple. Also of utmost importance is our continuing awareness that everything that a King declares constitute a command... His word is law. Our divine King Jesus said in **Matthew 28:20...** **Teaching them to observe all things that I have commanded you.**

His decrees laid out systematically in **Matthew 5,6,7** are unsurpassed since they constitute His foremost commandments given to all Christians for our success in Kingdom life and power. Thankfully the Holy Spirit is given to also:

**"...bring to your remembrance all that I have said to you" (John 14:26). "Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom, teaching and admonishing one another..." (Colossians 3:16).**

**v3... Blessed are the poor in spirit, for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven.**

Being poor in spirit does not only allude to walking in humility, but also to be empty and acknowledge that we are void in our human spirit- in the very depth of our being- so that we can be vessels unencumbered to receive the new realities of the Kingdom of Heaven. Like a young baby eaglet we must be eager to receive what our Father desires to pour into us to fill us up with Himself. If we are truly poor in spirit, the Kingdom of Heaven is ours. We are living in its reality now in the church age, and we will share in its full manifestation in the coming Kingdom age.

**v4... Blessed are those who mourn, for they shall be comforted.**

We have a world in chaos; every headline is bad news: earthquakes, famine and pestilence, economic upheaval, terrorist intrigue, murder and mayhem, sexual debauchery given political license, the murder of the innocent unborn, rape, child sexual abuse, amoral leadership, religious idolatry, greed and unbridled affluence juxtaposed against abject poverty... Who in his right mind would not mourn over the satanic control that predominates among all the people of our lonely planet earth? Christ is rejected and insulted as an object of ridicule, the Holy Spirit is grieved and frustrated in desolate churches bent on selfish sectarianism, and the whole world system sits in the lap of satan. A Holy God whose very heart aches for His creation wants us to mourn along with Him over the condition of our wayward planet. Our comfort rests in the reward of the Kingdom of Heaven touching earth as the Bride continues to make herself ready for her Holy Bridegroom.

**v5... Blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth.**

I like what one teacher said long ago about Moses when he was referred to as the meekest man on earth. He explained that the whole meaning of the word translated **meek** is **poise under pressure**. In this world we will suffer the world's opposition. To be meek is to remain faithful to what we know is right, to maintain our center in Christ no matter what circumstances come against us.

*Chapter 14-Christ's Kingdom According to the Scriptures*

**vv6,7...** *Blessed are those who hunger and thirst for righteousness, for they shall be satisfied. Blessed are the merciful, for they shall be shown mercy.*

The Kingdom of heaven manifests in us when our behavior is right. Just as food and drink sustain our beings physically, righteousness satisfies our human spirit and brings our soul into proper submission to and ongoing transformation by the Holy Spirit working in us. Righteous judgment gives one what he deserves, while to be merciful is to give one what he does not deserve. To be active children of the Kingdom we need to not only be righteous but also merciful. We know that if we are merciful to others, we will obtain mercy as well from the Lord, especially at His judgment seat... for we know that **mercy triumphs over judgment (James 2:13)**.

**vv8...** *Blessed are the pure in heart, for they shall see God.*

To be pure in heart is to be free from division, with the singleness of purpose of accomplishing God's will in all we do for God's glory. We receive Christ in our spirit, while our heart is the ground where the seed of His divine life grows. When we are pure in heart, then Christ may freely grow in us bearing the fruit of the Spirit in abundance (**Galatians 5:22-25**).

**vv9-12...** *Blessed are the peacemakers, for they shall be called the sons of God. Blessed are those who are persecuted for the sake of righteousness, for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven. Blessed are you when they reproach and persecute you, and while speaking lies, say every evil thing against you because of Me. Rejoice and exult, for your reward is great in Heaven; for so they persecuted the prophets who were before you.*

The fallen one, satan, is the father of rebellion. Since we must strive to live under the rule of the Kingdom of Heaven, we must be those who continually seek to make peace among men. Our Father is called the God of peace who will soon crush satan under our feet (**Romans 16:20**). When we are peacemakers we walk in His divine life and character, expressing His nature as true sons of God. Since as we have seen the whole world lies in the evil one (**1 John 5:19**), and is rampant with unrighteous depravity, when we continually seek to live righteously, we will be persecuted by way of ridicule even unto death. The Kingdom of Heaven belongs to us now! As we continue to walk in its principles we manifest its reality in greater and greater daily measure. We can therefore rejoice in unbridled exaltation because our very lives are

declaring in one accord throughout the earth, **Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!**

This first section of Kingdom truth called ***the Beatitudes*** demonstrates the nature of the people of the Kingdom who are under these nine blessings. The following section called ***the Similitudes***- which speak of the King's **declaration of our dependence** upon Him, concerns the influence that we the people of the Kingdom of Heaven are to have in and on the world.

**Matthew 5:13-16... *You are the salt of the earth, But if the salt has become tasteless, with what shall it be salted? It is no longer good for anything except to be cast out and trampled underfoot by men. You are the light of the world. It is impossible for a city situated upon a mountain to be hidden. Nor do men light a lamp and place it under the bushel, but on the lampstand; and it shines to all who are in the house. In the same way, let your light shine before men, so that they may see your good works and glorify your Father who is in Heaven.***

We are called to be **the salt** to a planet suffering profound corruption and decay, and **the light** shining in the depths of darkness and depravity. Salt is a substance that kills and eliminates the germs of corruption, and we are therefore in the world to keep the earth from becoming fully corrupted and irretrievable. The only way that we as salt become tasteless is when we become no different than the rest of mankind and indistinguishable in character from those who have not come to Christ. Without this divinely imparted saltiness we are worthless in influence, and will be trampled like useless dust underfoot. We retain our quality of salt only as we continue in the Word and prayer with humility loving others as Jesus Himself does.

In our nature we are the healing salt, and in our godly behavior we are the shining light. This light as a city on a mountain shines over all the surrounding regions touching all outsiders. On the other hand the lighted lamp on the lampstand as a figure shines over all those who are in the house. As James, the brother of the Lord declared ***Faith without works is dead (James 2:17)***. So therefore the Lord Jesus commands each of us as Kingdom people to be zealous for good works that demonstrate faith in action, responding to the tangible, real, felt needs of others. This glorifies and pleases the Father.

**Matthew 5:17-20... *Do not think that I have come to abolish the law or the prophets; I have not come to abolish, but to fulfill. For truly I say to you, Until heaven and earth pass away, one iota or one serif shall by no***

Chapter 14- Christ's Kingdom According to the Scriptures

*means pass away from the law until all come to pass. Therefore whoever annuls one of the least of these commandments, and teaches men so, shall be called the least in the Kingdom of Heaven; but whoever practices and teaches them, he shall be called great in the Kingdom of Heaven. For I say to you that unless your righteousness surpasses that of the scribes and Pharisees, you shall by no means enter the Kingdom of Heaven.*

The Lord Jesus' mission of recovery of all that was lost in the Fall could only be accomplished by His perfect keeping of the law on the one hand, and on the other hand by His substitutionary death on the cross which fulfilled the requirements of the law in providing a sinless sacrifice of atonement once and for all. He could only qualify for the second by keeping the first. We as children of the Father and Kingdom people need to fulfill only what is the higher law by way of resurrection life as stated by our Lord in:

**Matthew 22:37-40...** *And He said to him, "You shall love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind. This is the first and great commandment. And the second is like it: You shall love your neighbor as yourself. On these two commandments hang all the Law and the Prophets."*

We therefore see that both of these commandments are an issue of love, for true love is the intrinsic ingredient of the spirit of God's commandments.

What follows throughout the rest of Chapter 5 is clear demonstration of the Lord Jesus Christ's Kingly authority which complements the written law with the new law of His Kingdom with respect to each particular subject under consideration. It must be reiterated that this is not a legalistic adherence to doctrinal laws, ordinances, and statutes but is a way of life via the surpassing righteousness that can only be produced by the resurrection life of Christ continually working freely in us. We therefore live in the reality of the Kingdom today and will participate in its full manifestation in the future.

**vv21,22...** *You have heard that it was said to the ancients, "You shall not murder, and whoever murders shall be liable to the judgment." **But I say to you** that everyone who is angry with his brother shall be liable to the judgment...*

The phrase **you have heard** which is continually repeated by the Lord Jesus Christ (**vv21,27,33,38,43**) refers to the law given prior to His appearance. But in each instance He says **But I say to you** demonstrating that He has the rightful authority to augment the

requirements of God, with the focus being on the motive of the heart. Now that the King himself is on the scene he declares the new law of the Kingdom which expands and deepens the meaning of the old law with the new dispensation of the rule of His realm. In this portion of Scripture He speaks of reconciliation between 'brothers' (in the broader sense) and agreeing with your adversary so as not to suffer just punishment. Since the Lord is speaking to believers, it is clear that those who are forgiven by God through Christ's finished work of atonement are still held responsible for our thoughts, words, and actions and liable to the Lord's judgment for the purpose of discipline. We still have free will to obey or disobey the law of the Kingdom, but our faithful Father will be sure to reward obedience and punish disobedience.

**vv27,28...** *You have heard that it was said, "You shall not commit adultery." **But I say to you** that everyone who looks at a woman in order to lust after her has already committed adultery with her in his heart.*

We can see how much more strict the new law of the Kingdom is, because it requires that we judge and correct the inward motives of the heart. In our current society worldwide there is a constant incessant appeal to the flesh through all aspects of media. We are bombarded with images and programming that would engender lust since the amoral world system finds nothing wrong with illicit sex of all types. It is especially dangerous to our youth, who we now find are engaging in all forms of sex even at the tender age of 10 and 12 years of age. The consequences of sexually transmitted diseases which are nearly epidemic are but one result of such unwholesome behavior. The light of the church must shine in purity across generations to rescue all those who are ordained for salvation, whose names are written in the Lamb's Book of Life from the foundation of the world. This is a truly sobering dilemma.

**vv31,32...** *And it was said, Whoever divorces his wife, let him give her a certificate of divorce. **But I say to you** that everyone who divorces his wife, except for the cause of fornication, causes her to commit adultery, and whoever marries her who has been divorced commits adultery.*

What preceded this portion of Scripture in verses 21-30 complemented the old law, but from verses 31 through 48 the law of the old dispensation is forever changed by the new law of the Kingdom. The old law allowed for divorce due to the hardness of men's hearts (see **Matthew 19:7-8**). But our King's decree returns marriage to what it was in the beginning, back to God's original design:

**Matthew 19:3-6...** *And some Pharisees came to Him, testing Him and saying, Is it lawful for a man to divorce his wife for any cause? And He answered and said, Have you not read that He who created them from the beginning made them male and female, And said, "For this cause shall a man leave his father and his mother and shall be joined to his wife; and the two shall be one flesh"? So they are no longer two, but one flesh. Therefore what God has yoked together, let man not separate.*

This truth not only sanctifies marriage since it is clearly ordained by God, but also makes void the current trend toward same sex marital unions. God's original intent has not changed: one man and one woman bound together in holy matrimony as one flesh. The sad fact that divorce in Christendom is at nearly the same rate as those outside of the faith shows the level of worldliness that has permeated the church. I need to add the disclaimer that sincere repentant hearts can be forgiven of even this. Sadly this and any other breach of God's law will have continuing negative consequences, in diminishing the intensity of the divine light in the church, until we all fully live out "**Holiness Unto The Lord**".

**vv43-45,48...** *You have heard that it was said, "You shall love your neighbor and hate your enemy." **But I say to you, Love your enemies, and pray for those who persecute you, So that you may become sons of your Father who is in Heaven, because He causes His sun to rise on the evil and the good and sends rain on the just and the unjust... You therefore shall be perfect as your heavenly Father is perfect.***

To be perfect here again refers to loving God above all and your neighbor as yourself. It deals directly with being perfected in love as our heavenly Father is by His eternal glorious nature. We will never be perfect as God is perfect in power, wisdom, glory, or holiness, but we are commanded to be perfect in our hearts of love with our works (words, actions, and attitude) clearly showing it.

**Matthew 6:1,4;5-8...** *But take care not to do your righteousness before men in order to be gazed at by them; otherwise, you have no reward with your Father who is in Heaven... So that your alms may be in secret; and your Father who sees in secret will repay you. And when you pray, you shall not be like the hypocrites... so that they may be seen by men. Truly I say to you, They have their reward in full. But you, when you pray, enter into your private room, and shut your door and pray to your Father who is in secret; and your Father who sees in secret will repay you. And in praying do not babble empty words... for your Father knows the things that you have need of before you ask Him.*

Kingdom people with a humble spirit will seek to do all things to please our heavenly Father. We do not seek the praise of men for the righteous deeds we accomplish, for we always know that our Father sees all that we do and He discerns with accuracy the motives and intentions of our heart in our giving, in our prayer and fasting, and in our daily living.

**Matthew 6:9-13...** *You then pray in this way: Our Father who is in Heaven, Your name be sanctified; **Your Kingdom come; Your will be done, as in Heaven, so also on earth.** Give us today our daily bread. And forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors. And do not bring us into temptation, but deliver us from the evil one. **For Yours is the Kingdom and the Power and the Glory forever.** Amen.*

This prayer is given by our Lord as a pattern for prayer. It subtly reveals the Trinity in **vv9,10** with **Your name be sanctified** related to the Father, **Your Kingdom come** to the Son, and **Your will be done** to the Spirit. Because of the Fall in the Garden of Eden the will of God could not be done on earth, until the recovery of planet earth was initiated through the appearance of Jesus of Nazareth on the scene. We as children of God must pray for this transformation until the entire earth is fully recovered for God's restoration in the coming Kingdom age.

Again as a pattern this prayer puts God's name first and foremost followed by His Kingdom and His will, and then addresses petition for our needs. We seek daily provision living a life of faith. We also acknowledge both our sins in repentance as well as our daily need to forgive others without hesitation that our prayers may be unhindered. And we acknowledge our need for protection from the evil one and the evil things of this world that are an extension of his corrupt nature. In all of this we affirm His Kingdom, the free exercise of His power, and the manifestation of His glory for He is Jehovah God, all praise and honor to His Holy Name.

**vv16-18...** *And **when you fast**, do not be like the sullen-faced hypocrites, for they disfigure their faces so that they may appear to men to be fasting. Truly I say to you, they have their reward in full. But you, **when you fast**, anoint your head and wash your face, So that you may not appear to men to be fasting, but to your Father who is in secret; and your Father who sees in secret will repay you.*

To fast according to the leading of the Holy Spirit is an expression of a deep burden to pray for specific issues. It acknowledges that travailing intercession with fasting is often needed to disengage and break the powers of darkness off of people, and to aggressively combat the spiritual



resistance that **is** our daily warfare. It is another weapon in our arsenal to rout the enemy and fulfill the call in:

**Matthew 11:12 (NKJV)** ...*the Kingdom of Heaven suffers violence and the violent take it by force.*

For a more thorough study of the discipline of fasting and its intrinsic power, please refer to my blog [zionsgate.wordpress.com](http://zionsgate.wordpress.com) and the post entitled **The Joy of Fasting: Discipline, Deliverance, and Delight**. It will also be included in the sequel to this book, called **Cleansing the Temple**.

**vv19-21;31-33...** *Do not store up for yourselves treasures on the earth, where moth and rust consume and where thieves dig through and steal. But store up for yourselves treasures in Heaven, where neither moth nor rust consumes and where thieves do not dig through and steal. For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also... Therefore do not be anxious, saying What shall we eat? or What shall we drink? or With what shall we be clothed?... For your heavenly Father knows that you need all these things. **But seek first His Kingdom and His righteousness-** and all these things will be added to you.*

**Romans 14:17...** *The Kingdom of God is not eating and drinking, but righteousness and peace and joy in the Holy Spirit.*

We store up treasures in Heaven with our acts of loving kindness in giving to the poor and in caring for those in need; whether in giving of our finances, our time, or our physical labor. It is true freedom for our souls to give into Kingdom purposes, which at the same time eliminates the natural fear of losing what has been accumulated. Our lives are more than food and our bodies more than clothing. Since God has created us with purpose, when we acknowledge, love, and obey Him we can be assured of His careful direction and provision.

Having dealt with the issue of judgment in a prior chapter we move forward in Matthew 7 to other requirements for proper Kingdom living.

**Matthew 7:6(NKJV)**... *Do not give what is holy to the dogs; nor cast your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn and tear you in pieces.*

That which is holy refers to the objective truths of God's Word, while our pearls may refer to our personal experiences or testimony. This passage is difficult because it is clearly talking about people not animals. It

therefore compels us to have profound discernment in discriminating between true believers and those who are just religious but not saved... a major problem in the church. This is why this admonition follows the matter of judging, reiterating our need to be vigilant in self-examination so as not to play the hypocrite.

**vv7-8;11-12...** *Ask and it shall be given to you; seek and you shall find; knock and it shall be opened to you. For everyone who asks receives, and he who seeks finds, and to him who knocks it shall be opened... If you then being evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in Heaven give good things to those who ask Him! Therefore all that you wish men would do to you, so also you do to them; for this is the law and the prophets.*

Asking, seeking, and knocking are increasing levels of intensity in our communion and communication in prayer with our Father. Each level requires more of us since hidden factors must be understood and dealt with, in order to arrive at the place of receiving the answer to our petition. The Father is not withholding anything from us that we would need to fulfill our mission, destiny, and purpose in this life. This is why there is strong emphasis in His faithful Fatherhood and apparent desire to bless us with necessary good things.

**vv13-14...** *Enter through the narrow gate, for wide is the gate and broad is the way that leads to destruction, and many are those who enter through it. Because narrow is the gate and constricted is the way that leads to life, and few are those who find it.*

This set of verses has always been both troubling and challenging to me. On the one hand, in my humanness and wishful thinking I hoped that the many would not be so many, nor the few all that few. But the Scriptures are painfully clear: the gate is narrow and the way constricted because Jesus is declaring that the new law of His Kingdom is stricter and its demands higher than the old covenant law. **Please pay attention!** Many people attending church have been deceived into thinking that responding to an altar call and praying a rote prayer is their ticket to ride into Heaven. The rather offensive expression of **cheap grace** describes this serious error that has an antinomian multitude attending church services who may well not be children of the Kingdom at all.

This is why **vv17-23** are so tough... ouch! It is far better to be slightly wounded now rather than live in eternal torment later. By 'slightly wounded' I am referring to each of us allowing God to literally kill the old man in us that the new man in Christ may arise. Genuine salvation is

lived out in a totally radical transformation of every aspect of our soul: our mind, will, emotions, imagination, motives, aspirations, and desires—all become conformed to the image of Christ and according to His character.

**vv17-23...** *Even so every good tree produces good fruit, but the corrupt tree produces bad fruit. A good tree cannot produce bad fruit, but the corrupt tree produces bad fruit. **Every tree that does not produce good fruit is cut down and cast into the fire.** So then, **by their fruits you will recognize them.** Not everyone who says to Me, Lord, Lord, will enter into the Kingdom of Heaven, but he who does the will of My Father who is in Heaven. Many will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, was it not in Your name that we prophesied, and in Your name cast out demons, and in Your name did many works of power? And then I will declare to them: I never knew you. Depart from Me, you workers of lawlessness.*

**2 Corinthians 13:5...** *Test yourselves whether you are in the faith; **prove yourselves.** Or do you not realize about yourselves that Jesus Christ is in you, **unless you are disapproved?***

Let each of us allow the Holy Spirit to convict us daily of the true condition of our hearts, so that we can repent, confess, and be cleansed—and not fall into the condemnation and snares of the enemy.

**vv24-29...** *Everyone therefore who hears these words of Mine and does them shall be likened to a prudent man who built his house upon the rock. And the rain descended, and the rivers came, and the winds blew, and they beat against the house; and it did not fall, for it was founded on the rock. And everyone who hears these words of Mine and does not do them shall be likened to a foolish man who built his house upon the sand. And the rain descended, and the rivers came, and the winds blew, and they dashed against that house; and it fell, and its fall was great.*

*And when Jesus finished these words, the crowds were astounded at His teaching, for He taught them as One having authority and not like their scribes.*

Each of us needs to keep the words of Christ fresh in his heart. The Word is truly our spiritual food... it sustained our Lord Jesus during 40 days of testing in the wilderness; it will keep us in our daily trials and coming tribulation. We will see the full manifestation of the Holy Spirit's work in the comprehensive and total preparation of the Bride of Christ as each of us individually, and every congregation of believers fully surrender to the compelling Love, Grace, Mercy, and Perfect Will of the Father, according

to His Word- revealed in the Holy Bible. Jehovah Abba Father will have a Bride fully prepared for His only begotten Son... Amen! So be it Jehovah...

**James 1:22-25... *But be doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving yourselves.* For if anyone is a hearer of the word and not a doer, he is like a man observing his natural face in a mirror; for he observes himself, goes away, and immediately forgets what kind of man he was. **But he who looks into the perfect law of liberty and continues in it, and is not a forgetful hearer but a doer of the word, this one will be blessed in what he does.****

### **Chapter 15- Mysteries of the Kingdom**

From **Matthew 8** through **12** the Lord Jesus demonstrated His power over all the forces of darkness. From the healing of disease, casting out demons, and exercising divine authority in the power of the Holy Spirit over all the power of the enemy-He went on a systematic campaign of taking ground back from satan. He as the ultimate Rabbi (teacher) modeled for us how we are to carry the Kingdom and likewise do the work of taking back step by step in all areas of our personal influence, what the enemy has stolen.

**Matthew 9:35-37;10:1...** *And Jesus went about all the cities and the villages, teaching in their synagogues and **preaching the gospel of the Kingdom** and healing every disease and every sickness. And seeing the crowds, He was moved with compassion for them, because they were harassed and cast away like sheep not having a shepherd. Then He said to His disciples, **The harvest is great, but the workers few; Therefore beseech the Lord of the harvest that He would thrust out workers into His harvest.***

*And He called His twelve disciples to Him and gave them authority over unclean spirits, so that they would cast them out and heal every disease and every sickness.*

The Lord Jesus Christ, King of the heavenly kingdom is not only the Shepherd of the sheep but He is also the Lord of the harvest. His Kingdom is established and consists of living things which can grow and multiply. The authority that the Lord gives to His disciples to cast out demons and heal diseases is a glimpse of the coming age of the millennium, in which all demons are dealt with and cast out and all diseases will be healed.

**Isaiah 35:2b;5,6b;8a;10...** ***They will see the glory of Jehovah, The splendor of our God...** Then the eyes of the blind will be opened, And the ears of the deaf will be unstopped... For water will break forth in the wilderness, And streams in the desert. And a highway will be there, and a way, And it will be called, **The Way of Holiness...** And the ransomed of Jehovah will return And will come to **Zion** with a ringing shout, And*

*eternal joy will be upon their heads. They will lay hold on gladness and joy, And sorrow and sighing will flee away.*

**Matthew 10:16-20...** *Behold, I send you forth as sheep in the midst of wolves. Be therefore prudent as serpents and guileless as doves. And beware of men, for they will deliver you up to [councils], and in their synagogues they will scourge you. **And you will be brought before governors and kings for My sake, for a testimony to them and to the Gentiles. But when they deliver you up, do not be anxious about how or what you should speak, for it will be given to you in that hour what you should speak; For you are not the ones speaking, but the Spirit of your Father is the One speaking in you.***

Being wise as serpents we would be continually aware and attune to what is going on around us at all times; like a martial artist our 'sphere' will not be penetrated by any enemy without extreme resistance. To be guileless or harmless as doves implies not mixed with any evil motive and not bent on hurting others. The adversary is the devil, and by way of allegiance his children. The enemy is not misguided and lost mankind, who we are commissioned to rescue at all cost.

**10:24-28;32-34...** *A disciple is not above the teacher, nor a slave above his master. It is sufficient for the disciple that he become like his teacher, and the slave like his master. If they have called the Master of the house Beelzebul, how much more those of His household! Therefore do not fear them; **for there is nothing covered which will not be revealed, and hidden which will not be made known.** What I say to you in the darkness, speak in the light; and what you hear in the ear, proclaim on the housetops. And do not fear those who kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul; but rather fear Him who is able to destroy both soul and body in Gehenna.*

*Everyone therefore who will confess in Me before men, I also will confess in him before My Father who is in Heaven; But whoever will deny Me before men, I also will deny him before My Father who is in Heaven. **Do not think that I have come to bring peace on the earth; I have not come to bring peace, but a sword.***

On this earth we cannot expect to be treated with kindness by the world. On the contrary, we will often be misunderstood, ridiculed, hated and persecuted, for this is how the world treated our Lord Jesus. We can maintain a heart of peace in this reality. We must therefore preach the gospel as a faithful witness for the Lord. Unfortunately many believers give up when they experience opposition, not daring to 'offend'. But the lost are dangling over a burning hell, with only the Lake of Fire as their ultimate destination **unless** we proclaim the truths and mysteries of the

Kingdom to them with boldness and humility inspired and guided by the indwelling presence of the Holy Spirit.

The **sword** which the Lord alludes to here is not a physical sword for combat (like a samurai), but I believe He means the sword of the Word that shall pierce through their own soul. It is dealing with the emotions and motives that anchor people in falsehood and the deception of the evil one. We use the sword of the Spirit which is the Word of God as our primary offensive weapon in our warfare against the forces of darkness and their minions.

**v38... And he who does not take his cross and follow after Me is not worthy of Me.**

We **must** love the Lord Jesus above all: above parents, spouse, children, friends... or anything else. At all costs our first love must be the Lord that we may be accounted worthy of Him. This singular devotion, allegiance, and deep affection is a key to empowered Kingdom living... not loving our lives even unto death.

**Matthew 11:25-30... At that time Jesus answered and said, I extol You, Father, Lord of Heaven and of earth, because You have hidden these things from the wise and intelligent and have revealed them to infants. Yes, Father, for thus it has been well-pleasing in Your sight. All things have been delivered to Me by My Father, and no one fully knows the Son except the Father; neither does anyone fully know the Father except the Son and him to whom the Son wills to reveal Him.**

**Come to Me all who toil and are burdened, and I will give you rest. Take My yoke upon you and learn from Me, for I am meek and lowly in heart, and you will find rest for your souls. For My yoke is easy and My burden is light.**

To know the Son requires that the Father reveal Him (**Matthew 16:17**), and to know the Father requires that the Son reveal Him (**John 17:6,26**). Finding rest for our souls in Christ is a rest from rebellion and willfulness. It allows the soul (mind, will, emotions, imagination, motives, aspirations, desires) to bow before the Spirit and receive profound refreshment in Christ. His yoke is easy for us when we are yoked to Him who has already carried the heaviest burden of all: the sin of fallen mankind on the cross at Calvary. From His baptism forward He moved in resurrection power for He was truly a dead man walking... He was **the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world**. We are therefore privileged to be invited in

this way to share His yoke; His burden for mankind and all creation that need full recovery and transformation.

**Matthew 12:28-32;35-37...** *But if I, by the Spirit of God, cast out demons, then the Kingdom of God has come upon you. Or how can anyone enter into the house of the strong man and plunder his goods unless he first binds the strong man? And then he will thoroughly plunder his house. He who is not with Me is against Me, and he who does not gather with Me scatters. Therefore I say to you, **Every sin and blasphemy will be forgiven men, but blasphemy against the Spirit will not be forgiven. And whoever speaks against the Holy Spirit, it will not be forgiven him, neither in this age nor in the one to come.***

*The good man out of his good treasure brings forth good things, and the evil man, out of his evil treasure, brings forth evil things. And I say to you that every idle word which men shall speak, they will render an account concerning it in the Day of Judgment. For **by your words you shall be justified, and by your words you shall be condemned.***

The Spirit of God **is** the power of the Kingdom of God. How does the Kingdom of God come? Through its power; casting out demons is one of the most significant manifestations of the reality of the Kingdom of God. Where the Spirit of God is in power, the Kingdom of God manifests, and demons have no ground to resist or stand. The strong man who is the wicked one is bound through the cross of our Lord Jesus by the power of the Holy Spirit in His name... with the prayer of faith from our hearts and in our mouths. We must soberly recognize that our words have power, and that we must guard our hearts and mouths from declaring things that void our prayers by contradicting a spirit of faith. Our words justify us when we agree with God and His revelation via the Holy Spirit.

Beginning with **Matthew 13** the unveiling of the mysteries of the Kingdom unfolds. Due to the hardness of their hearts, their Messiah had been fully rejected by the leaders of the Jewish religion, which compelled Jesus to break with them. He would now go to the rest of humanity to declare the reality of the Kingdom.

**Matthew 13:1,2...** *On that day Jesus went out of the house and sat beside the sea. And great crowds were gathered to Him, so that He stepped into a boat and sat, and all the crowd stood on the shore.*

The **house** signifies the house of Israel (**10:6**), while the sea signifies the Gentile world (**Revelation 17:15**). This transition is pivotal because after forsaking the house of Israel and turning to the Gentiles, He begins to give the parables concerning the mysteries of the Kingdom. They are



Chapter 15- Mysteries of the Kingdom

called mysteries because unless the Spirit of God reveals them no one can understand. He comes out of the house (a place of restriction), goes out to the sea (an unlimited area) and sits in a boat. The boat though it is in the sea, does not belong to the sea. It therefore typifies the church, which is in the world but not of the world.

**Matthew 13:3-13;16...** *And He spoke many things to them in parables, saying, Behold, the sower went out to sow. And as he sowed, some seeds fell beside the way, and the birds came and devoured them. And others fell on the rocky places, where they did not have much earth, and immediately they sprang up because they had no depth of earth. But when the sun rose, they were scorched; and because they had no root, they withered. And others fell on the thorns, and the thorns came up and choked them. But others fell on the good earth and yielded fruit, one a hundredfold and one sixtyfold and one thirtyfold. He who has ears to hear, let him hear.*

*And the disciples came and said to Him, Why do You speak in parables to them? And He answered and said to them, Because to you it has been given to know the mysteries of the Kingdom of Heaven, but to them it has not been given... v13- For this reason I speak to them in parables, because seeing they do not see, and hearing they do not hear, nor do they understand... v16- But **blessed are your eyes because they see, and your ears because they hear.***

The **seed** is the word of the Kingdom. There is only one kind of seed, but four different types of **soil** which is the human heart. The sower is apparently the Lord Jesus Christ. From the Lord's first appearing when He came to sow the seed until He comes back to reap the harvest at the end of the age, everything concerning the Kingdom is a mystery to the carnal mind. Only the enlightened mind of a submissive heart can understand these mysteries by the work of the Holy Spirit.

**vv18-23...** *You therefore hear the parable of the one who sowed. When anyone hears the word of the Kingdom and does not understand, the evil one comes and snatches away that which has been sown in his heart. This is the one sown beside the way. And the one sown on the rocky places, this is he who hears the word and immediately receives it with joy; Yet he does not have root in himself but lasts only for a time, and when affliction or persecution occurs because of the word, immediately he is stumbled. And the one sown in the thorns, this is he who hears the word, and the anxiety of the age and the deceitfulness of riches utterly choke the word, and it becomes unfruitful. **But the one sown on the good earth, this is he who hears the word and understands, who by all means bears fruit and produces, one a hundredfold, and one sixtyfold, and one thirtyfold.***

The soil of our hearts must be receptive to receive the truths of the claims of Christ. Good soil is carefully prepared, broken up with all the rocks and weeds removed. Hard packed soil has no opportunity to receive the precious seed because birds of prey (evil spirits) will come to devour what has not been buried within the soil.

**Hosea 10:12...** *Sow unto righteousness for yourselves; Reap according to lovingkindness; Break up your fallow ground; For it is time to seek Jehovah Until He comes and rains Righteousness on you.*

It requires active listening to properly comprehend truth when it is given. We must not let the many distractions and anxieties of this world system strip away the realities of the eternal realm, for all that we see in the physical will likewise require full transformation into God's perfect design. We were created for fruitfulness and can only fulfill our original purpose to the level that we fully submit to weeding of the hindering corruption, and the careful cultivation that will produce abundant and lasting fruit. The more we surrender to the will of the Father, the more outstanding the amount of fruit that is available for harvest. Let us strive for a harvest of an eternal weight of glory that we may present all our fruitfulness to the Lord, for He is Lord of the Harvest and worthy to receive the product of His labor.

**Matthew 13:24-30...** *Another parable He set before them, saying, **The Kingdom of Heaven has become like a man sowing good seed in his field.** But while the men slept, **his enemy came and sowed tares in the midst of the wheat** and went away. And when the blade sprouted and produced fruit, then the tares appeared also. And the slaves of the master of the house came and said to him, Sir, did you not sow good seed in your field? Where then did the tares come from? And he said to them, An enemy has done this. And the slaves said to him, Do you want us then to go and collect them? But he said, No, lest while collecting the tares, you uproot the wheat along with them. **Let both grow together until the harvest, and at the time of the harvest I will say to the reapers, Collect first the tares and bind them into bundles to burn them up, but the wheat gather into my barn.***

The church is made up of people coming out of the world to God, while the Kingdom of Heaven is coming from God to the world. We are the **ekklesia** or 'called out ones'. Here the good seed are the sons of the Kingdom rather than being the word of the Kingdom as in the Parable of the Sower. After the word of the Kingdom has been received, it grows in those who receive it and they are transformed into sons of the Kingdom of Heaven. The enemy satan has sown the tares which are the sons of the evil one in the midst of the Kingdom people. Tares are remarkable in that

Chapter 15- Mysteries of the Kingdom

they resemble wheat and are totally indistinguishable even until they grow several feet. It is only when the fruit appears that one recognizes the good from the bad. At that time the tare is black while the wheat is golden in color. When the harvest begins the distinction will be made between the good and bad fruit.

**vv31&32... Another parable** *He set before them, saying, The Kingdom of Heaven is like a mustard seed, which a man took and sowed in his field, and which is smaller than all the seeds; but when it has grown, it is greater than the herbs and becomes a tree, so that the birds of heaven come and roost in its branches.*

This parable is very deep because mustard seed is an annual herb which does not by nature become a tree. When the church represented as a mustard seed becomes a tree, it has the outward appearance of the Kingdom but has allowed birds of prey to lodge in its 'branches'. These birds are evil spirits which motivate evil people to seek to corrupt the divine work of the true church. Christendom unfortunately has become an organizational structure and enterprise which in too many ways hinders the full manifestation of the Kingdom of Heaven in our midst.

**vv33-35... Another parable** *He spoke to them: The Kingdom of Heaven is like leaven, which a woman took and hid in three measures of meal until the whole was leavened. All these things Jesus spoke in parables to the crowds, and apart from a parable He spoke nothing to them. So that what was spoken through the prophet might be fulfilled, saying, "I will open My mouth in parables; I will utter things hidden from the foundation of the world."*

In the entire Bible **leaven always represents something bad**. Leavening is against the Scriptures, which strongly forbid putting any leaven into the meal offering (**Leviticus 2:4-5,11**). This signifies improper mixture within the church where pagan practices, heretical doctrines, and other unprofitable things have crept in to spoil the work of the ministry. We must ferret out these things and return the church to the pattern and fruitfulness desired by our Lord.

**vv41-43... The Son of Man will send His angels, and they will collect out of His Kingdom all the stumbling blocks and those who practice lawlessness, And will cast them into the furnace of fire. In that place there will be the weeping and the gnashing of teeth. Then the righteous will shine forth like the sun in the Kingdom of their Father. He who has ears to hear, let him hear.**

**v44...** *The Kingdom of Heaven is like a treasure hidden in the field, which a man found and hid, and in his joy goes and sells all that he has, and buys the field.*

Some interpret this parable to be that the treasure is Christ, the field is the Bible, and the man is the sinner. He gives up everything in this life to 'buy' the field in order to appropriate Christ as his treasure. There are some problems with this interpretation because a sinner cannot buy salvation or Christ as an article of merchandise, and if the gospel can be bought, it ceases to be the gospel. I believe another interpretation solves this problem: The field is the world, the treasure is the church, and the man is Christ Himself. The Lord forsakes all to buy her as His precious treasure. ... **He for the joy set before Him, endured the cross, despising the shame...** (Hebrews 12:2)

**v45 &46...** *Again, the Kingdom of Heaven is like a merchant seeking fine pearls; And finding one pearl of great value, he went and sold all that he had and bought it.*

The pearl is produced in water or comes out of the sea, which signifies the world corrupted by satan. Therefore the pearl refers to the church, constituted of regenerated believers who are of great value to the Lord. He again is the One who made the ultimate sacrifice to purchase us with His blood for He loves us that much.

**v47-51...** *Again, the Kingdom of Heaven is like a net cast into the sea and gathering from every species, Which, when it was filled, they brought onto the shore, and sat down and collected the good into vessels; but the foul they cast out. So it will be at the consummation of the age: the angels will go forth and separate the evil from the midst of the righteous, And will cast them into the furnace of fire. In that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth. Have you understood all these things? They said to Him, Yes.*

The sea represents the world of humanity, while every species signifies the nations. The good are the sheep that are justified in Christ, whereas the foul are the goats who are condemned. The furnace signifies the lake of fire and the final judgment of the nations.

**v52 &53...** *And He said to them, **For this reason every scribe disciplined to the Kingdom of Heaven is like a householder who brings forth out of his treasure things new and old.** And when Jesus finished these **parables**, He departed from there.*

*Chapter 15- Mysteries of the Kingdom*

We as disciples of Christ are householders in the Kingdom with the treasure of the new and old knowledge of the Scriptures, as well as the treasure of the experience of the Kingdom from Heaven in reality. Let us endeavor to so walk as ambassadors of Christ that we truly represent the Kingdom of our Precious Lord and Betrothed with humility, righteousness, and the full release of His Holy Spirit.



### ***Chapter 16- Called, Commissioned, and Empowered***

We find ourselves at the end of the Church Age, where I believe that many who are alive today- prayerfully myself included- will live to see the return of the Lord Jesus Christ. The Second Coming will occur at a time when the darkness has so enveloped the planet that unless the Lord returns quickly at that point- no one of His blood-bought children would survive.

I want to stress that this book does not promote, nor do I subscribe to the erroneous theology of what has been called "The Kingdom Now" movement. Their premise is that the church will grow and take over all areas of society, transforming the planet into an ideal and unified society and culture that will then welcome the Lord to reign, peacefully establishing His Kingdom on the earth.

This theology is bankrupt for the Scriptures are very clear: although Christ has paid the price and rightfully holds the title deed to earth, the world still sits in the lap of satan and is under his power. The boat in the midst of the sea of humanity is the church, the remnant of called out ones who respond to the call of God and are chosen to be heirs of salvation. We will see the Lord take over, but the battle with the forces of darkness will rage ever more intensely until His Glorious Appearing. Thankfully to His glory, the harvest between now and the full inauguration of His reign will bring at least one billion more souls into the Kingdom.

**2 Thessalonians 1:5-12...** *A plain indication of the righteous judgment of God, that you may be accounted worthy of the Kingdom of God, for which also you suffer; Since it is just with God to repay with affliction those afflicting you, And to you who are being afflicted, **rest with us at the revelation of the Lord Jesus from Heaven with the angels of His power, in flaming fire, Rendering vengeance to those who do not know God and to those who do not obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ. They will pay the penalty of eternal destruction from the presence of the Lord and from the glory of His strength **When He comes to be glorified in His saints and to be marveled at in all those who have believed... in that day.** For which also we pray always concerning you, that our God may count you worthy of your calling and may fulfill in***

*power your every good intention for goodness and your work of faith, **So that the name of our Lord Jesus may be glorified in you, and you in Him, according to the grace of our God and the Lord Jesus Christ.***

The Apostle John was privileged to record in his gospel the encouragement that the Lord gave to His disciples just prior to His passion, resurrection, and ascension to the right hand of the Father. This is our instruction as well for successfully participating in His Last Days ministry as ambassadors of His Glorious Kingdom, **for He is its Glory.**

**John 14:1-3...** *Do not let your heart be troubled; believe into God, believe also into Me. In My Father's house are many abodes; if it were not so, I would have told you; for I go to prepare a place for you. And if I go and prepare a place for you, I am coming again and will receive you to Myself, so that where I am you also may be.*

God's building is His living habitation with His redeemed people. We are the temple being jointly fitted together... the New Jerusalem and Mount Zion which will descend from Heaven to earth at the right time of the full manifestation of God's presence.

**vv6-12...** *Jesus said to him, **I am the way and the reality and the life; no one comes to the Father except through Me.** If you had known Me, you would have known My Father also; and henceforth you know Him and have seen Him. Philip said to Him, Lord, show us the Father and it is sufficient for us. Jesus said to him, Have I been so long a time with you, and you have not known Me, Philip? **He who has seen Me has seen the Father;** how is it that you say, Show us the Father?*

*Do you not believe that I am in the Father and the Father is in Me? The words that I say to you I do not speak from Myself, but the Father who abides in Me does His works. Believe Me that I am in the Father and the Father is in Me; but if not, believe because of the works themselves. **Truly, truly, I say to you, he who believes into Me, the works which I do he shall do also; and greater works than these he shall do because I am going to the Father.***

The Trinity is the reality of God which He desires to reveal in us and through us. He is one and yet He is three- the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit. The Son is the embodiment and expression of the Father, and the Spirit is the full realization of the Son in His pervasive presence. God the Father is hidden, God the Son has been manifested among men, and God the Spirit enters into redeemed man to be his life and life supply. Therefore the Triune God who **is One...** the Father in the Son and the Son



as the Holy Spirit- imparts Himself into us through the new birth to be our portion that we enjoy Him as everything to us in His divine Trinity.

**vv15-18,20...** *If you love Me, you will keep my commandments. And I will ask the Father, and He will give you another Comforter, that He may be with you forever, Even the Spirit of reality, whom the world cannot receive, because He abides with you and shall be in you. I will not leave you as orphans; I am coming to you... In that day you will know that I am in My Father, and you in Me, and I in you.*

The Spirit of reality (truth) is the Spirit of Christ (**Romans 8:9**). The Lord Jesus through His death, burial, and resurrection- releases His life-giving Spirit. This mystery is revealed here for the first time: the promise of the Spirit's indwelling presence (see **1Corinthians 6:19; 15:45** and **Romans 8:11**). What an awesome privilege and responsibility we have in representing the Trinity as those who carry His presence everywhere we go. We must be ever vigilant to do so with dignity, humility, and obedient submission to His Perfect Will that we may do the greater works that Jesus prophesied we would do. Can we mature in this? Yes... and Amen!

**vv21,23,26-27...** *He who has My commandments and keeps them, he is the one who loves Me; and he who loves Me will be loved by My Father, and I will love him and will manifest Myself to him... If anyone loves Me, he will keep My word, and My Father will love him, and We will come to him and make an abode with him.*

*...the Comforter, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in My name, He will teach you all things and remind you of all the things which I have said to you. Peace I leave with you; My peace I give to you; not as the world gives do I give to you. Do not let your heart be troubled, neither let it be afraid.*

When the Spirit comes, He comes with the Father and the Son, which is further proof that the three are one God. The Trinity is dispensing Himself into us in His divine life to be our life, our love, our everything. **Praise His Holy Name... Hallelujah!!!**

**John 15:1-11...** *I am the true vine, and My Father is the husbandman. Every branch in Me that does not bear fruit, He takes it away; and every branch that bears fruit, He prunes it that it may bear more fruit. You are already clean because of the word which I have spoken to you. Abide in Me and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself unless it abides in the vine, so neither can you unless you abide in Me. I am the vine; you are the branches. He who abides in Me and I in him, he bears much fruit; for apart from Me you can do nothing.*

*If anyone does not abide in Me, he is cast out as a branch and is dried up; and they gather them and cast them into the fire, and they are burned. **If you abide in Me and My words abide in you, ask whatever you will, and it shall be done for you.** In this is My Father glorified, that you bear much fruit and so you will become My disciples. As the Father has loved Me, I also have loved you; abide in My love. If you keep My commandments, you will abide in My love; even as I have kept My Father's commandments and abide in His love. **These things I have spoken to you that My joy may be in you and that your joy may be made full.***

This represents the full tree of life expressing the Triune God's divine life, and we have a part in it as His branches! The Father is seen as the cultivator (husbandman), who is the source, the planner, and all the substance to the vine. The Son as the vine is the full embodiment of all the riches of the Godhead. We express the Father in a corporate way through the branches, with the Son as the vine (trunk) and center of God's economy. When we abide in Christ and allow Him and His word to abide in us- we are truly one with Him. He works within us through our prayers, for when we abide and pray, He is praying as well in our praying. This is the catalyst to fruitfulness, which glorifies the Father. He speaks into us and as we obey, we demonstrate our love to Him bringing Him joy. This joy 'circulates' to us giving us a joyful life no matter what circumstances befall us.

**vv12-17... This is My commandment, that you love one another even as I have loved you.** *No one has greater love than this, that one lay down his life for his friends. You are My friends if you do what I command you. No longer do I call you slaves, for the slave does not know what his master is doing; but **I have called you friends, for all the things which I have heard from My Father I have made known to you. You did not choose Me, but I chose you, and I set you that you should go forth and bear fruit and that your fruit should remain, that whatever you ask the Father in My name, He may give you. These things I command you that you may love one another.***

The fruitfulness described here is not the personal character development that we find in **Galatians 5:22**. The fruit of the Spirit maturing in us are akin to what is stated in **Colossians 1:27...** *Christ in you, the hope of glory.* The virtues that we possess through abiding in Christ are not counted as the Lord's multiplication. In the context of the vine and branches, the Lord Jesus is directly speaking to our producing other believers who are mentored into producing other believers as well. This does not happen unless we invest our time in personal relationship for their spiritual nourishment and growth in maturity, which includes their personal character growth as seen in the **Galatians** passage, and their

producing other believers also- and investing themselves into them. This is tangible demonstration of how we are to love one another as Christ has loved us... and our self-sacrifice under the leading of the Holy Spirit will bear fruit a hundredfold, sixtyfold, and thirtyfold. Single-minded devotion to the Lord lead by His Spirit will cause us to bear fruit in great abundance.

**John 16:7-15...** *But I tell you the truth, It is expedient for you that I go away; for if I do not go away, the Comforter will not come to you; but if I go, I will send Him to you. And when He comes, He will convict the world concerning sin and concerning righteousness and concerning judgment: Concerning sin, because they do not believe into Me; And concerning righteousness, because I am going to the Father and you no longer behold Me; And concerning judgment, because the ruler of this world has been judged.*

*I have many things to say to you, but you cannot bear them now. But when He, the Spirit of reality, comes, He will guide you into all the reality; for He will not speak from Himself, but what He hears He will speak; and He will declare to you the things that are coming. He will glorify Me, for He will receive of Mine and will declare it to you. All that the Father has is Mine; for this reason I have said that He receives of Mine and will declare it to you.*

In Adam we were born in sin. The only hope for mankind is to believe in Christ Jesus, the Son of God who alone paid the full price for our redemption. He is righteousness to us, and we are justified in Him alone (**Romans 3:24; 4:25**). Those of humanity who do not repent and believe in Christ remain in sin and will share the judgment of satan for eternity. These are the main points of the gospel which the Holy Spirit uses to convict the world through us.

Secondly, the work of the Holy Spirit is to guide believers into all truth (reality), to make all that Jesus the Son is and has real to each believer. All that the Father is and has is embodied in the Son (**Colossians 2:9**), and all that the Son is and has is declared as truth and reality to believers through the Spirit. This glorifies the Son with the Father, and is the tangible reality of the Triune God being worked into and mingled with believers.

Thirdly, the Spirit reveals and declares the things that are to come; all that has yet to manifest according to God the Father's economy. He brings to mind gems out of the whole counsel of God and shows correlation, confirmation, and present truth revelation that opens up the depth of meaning of God's Word to us, that to many is otherwise

inscrutable. Declaring the future before it happens is a bold method of bringing attention and conviction to unbelievers concerning the claims of Christ and the reality and true implications of existence which can only be understood in the light of God's Holy Word. This work of the Spirit in its three aspects corresponds with the three sections of the Apostle John's writings: his Gospel, his Epistles, and the book of Revelation.

**v33...** *These things I have spoken to you that in Me you may have peace. In the world you have affliction, but take courage; I have overcome the world.*

This world in great distress is perplexing. Not only do we who are children of God carry the eternal treasure in earthen vessels, but we have the full awareness that most of mankind is launching into eternity unprepared. This is one of the most troubling aspects of life- fully knowing the truth in His Divine Person, and yet so very few receive this saving knowledge and act upon it. With humble gratitude we must allow the burden of God's heart to become our burden. As Benny Hinn says '**Winning the lost at any cost**', should be our mandate as well. And thanking God for the peace that surpasses all knowledge, we can be courageous to be overcomers in this world as He is.

**John 17:1-5...** *These things Jesus spoke, and lifting up His eyes to Heaven, He said, Father, the hour has come; glorify Your Son that the Son may glorify You; Even as You have given Him authority over all flesh to give eternal life to all whom You have given Him. And this is eternal life, that they may know You, the only true God, and Him who You have sent, Jesus Christ. I have glorified You on earth, finishing the work which You have given Me to do. And now, glorify Me along with Yourself, Father, with the glory which I had with You before the world was.*

Ponder this again with me: the God of all things (more than just this universe) condescended to come to earth to be incarnated in flesh. This flesh was God's tabernacle or place of dwelling. His divinity was concealed and confined in His humanity, just as God's Shekinah glory had been concealed within the tabernacle. We see Him on the mount of transfiguration once, when His divinity flashed in His humanity and His glory was released (**Matthew 17:1-4; John 1:14**). In anticipation of His death, He looks beyond His passion to the resurrection that would uplift His humanity into His divine nature, with the result that His entire being- His divinity and His humanity would be glorified. By this the Father would be glorified in Him.

**John 17** truly is **the Lord's prayer** because it declares the divine mystery that would be fulfilled in three stages. First- in Christ's resurrection where His divinity was released from within His humanity into believers. Then secondly, it is being fulfilled in the church where the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit are continually being glorified as His resurrection life continues to be expressed through His many members. Finally it will ultimately be fulfilled in the New Jerusalem, where He will be fully expressed in glory through the Bride of Christ and Her divine Bridegroom, the Lord Jesus for all eternity.

It is of special note to consider **v5** more closely. Jesus says, "**And now, glorify Me along with Yourself, Father, with the glory which I had with You before the world was.**" This verse alone would be sufficient to affirm the deity of Christ, for only a lunatic would make such a statement if it were not true. And yet we have the **many infallible proofs** of the whole counsel of God that fully confirm not only the deity of Christ but also the truth of all Scripture. He had divine glory along with the Father in eternity past, before the world was created. He never lost or forfeited His divinity; it was only veiled so that the emphasis could be on His humanity empowered by the Holy Spirit. This is to give each of us clear encouragement and challenge to walk as He walked in the world: in full submission to the will of the Father, and thereby empowered to walk in Kingdom authority by the power of the Holy Spirit.

**vv6-10...** *I have manifested Your name to the men whom You gave Me out of the world. **They were Yours, and You gave them to Me, and they have kept Your word. Now they have come to know that all that You have given Me is from You, For the words which You gave Me I have given to them, and they received them and knew truly that I came forth from You, and they have believed that You have sent Me. I ask concerning them, I do not ask concerning the world, but concerning those whom You have given Me, for they are Yours; and all that is Mine is Yours, and Yours Mine; and I have been glorified in them.***

The names **God** and **Jehovah** were revealed in many aspects in the Old Testament, along with many of the other names of the Godhead. The name that Jesus is fully unveiling here is the name **Father**, which was only mentioned briefly in several passages in the book of Isaiah. The Lord came to manifest and make the Father known to all those who belonged to the Father from the foundation of the world; all of us whose names are written in **the Lamb's Book of Life**. We are likewise to declare the Father, which is why we pray to the Father in Jesus' name- receiving the answer by the work of the Holy Spirit and the ministering holy angels of God.

It is ever so critical to realize that the Lord Jesus is not praying for the world- as He clearly states He is asking not concerning the world, **but only those whom the Father has given Him**. It is clear to me that from eternity past, the Godhead knew not only the end of the creation from the beginning, but also every single person- man, woman, and child who would come to the saving knowledge of the truth and become forevermore children of God and of His Kingdom. This sober truth must be allowed to engender in each of us permanent humility, gratitude, and instant obedience to the leading of the Spirit for we are those who are privileged beyond comprehension.

**v11-17...** *And I am no longer in the world; yet they are in the world, and I am coming to You. **Holy Father, keep them in Your name, which You have given to Me, that they may be one even as We are [One].** When I was with them, I kept them in Your name, which You have given to Me, and I guarded them; and not one of them perished, except the son of perdition, that the Scripture might be fulfilled. But now I am coming to You, and these things I speak in the world that they may have My joy made full in themselves.*

*I have given them Your word, and the world has hated them, because they are not of the world even as I am not of the world. **I do not ask that You would take them out of the world, but that You would keep them out of the hands of the evil one. They are not of the world, even as I am not of the world. Sanctify them in the truth; Your word is truth.***

The Lord Jesus in **v11** makes one of the deepest requests that can possibly be made. He is asking, apparently according to the will of the Father, that all of His true disciples would experience and live out the oneness that He, the Father, and the Holy Spirit share intimately. This is the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace that we as believers are to daily strive for. In making His permanent habitation in man, this Holy God has crafted one of the most overwhelming realities, Christ in us, the hope and reality of glory. We must enjoy the Father's name- the Father Himself, as the primary factor of our oneness.

It is interesting that He also states that He is not asking that we would be removed from this troubled planet, but that the enemy would not be allowed to do us permanent damage. Let's take a moment to tie this together with two other Scriptures:

**Acts 1:8...** ***But you shall receive power when the Holy Spirit comes upon you, and you shall be my witnesses both in Jerusalem and in all Judea and Samaria and unto the uttermost part(s) of the earth.***

**Revelation 12:11... *And they overcame him because of the blood of the Lamb and because of the word of their testimony, and they loved not their [lives] unto death.***

In the **Acts** reference- the word **witnesses** is literally **martyrs**. These have died to self so that we can bear a living testimony of the resurrected Christ. And even in our witness, the **Revelation** verse is ever operative: We overcome the enemy by the blood of Jesus which we are sealed by, stopping all accusations of the adversary against us and giving us full victory over him. Our testimony is that of a transformed life in a new creation, and the proclamation of the gospel of the Kingdom, just as the Lord Himself declared. We acknowledge that nothing, not even death will separate us from the love of God (study carefully all 39 verses of **Romans 8**).

**John 17:18-26... *As You have sent Me into the world, I also have sent them into the world. And for their sake I sanctify Myself, that they themselves also may be sanctified in truth. And I do not ask concerning these only, but concerning those also who believe into Me through their word, That they all may be one; even as You, Father, are in Me and I in You, that they also may be in Us; that the world may believe that You have sent Me.***

***And the glory which You have given Me I have given to them, that they may be one, even as We are one; I in them, and You in Me, that they may be perfected into one, that the world may know that You have sent Me and have loved them even as You have loved Me. Father, concerning that which You have given Me, I desire that they also may be with Me where I am, that they may behold My glory, which You have given Me, for You have loved Me before the foundation of the world. Righteous Father, though the world has not known You, yet I have known You, and these have known that You have sent Me. And I have made Your name known to them and will yet make it known, that the love with which You have loved Me may be in them, and I in them.***

The Father sent the Son into the world on a mission of mercy: to rescue the creation and specifically man who was made in His image and after His likeness. If we are truly **Christians**, then we are **little Christs** (little anointed ones) whom the Lord Jesus has sent into the world on the same mission of mercy. Another critical aspect of our oneness according to God's holy purposes is our **sanctification**, which is separation from the world unto God- accomplished through adherence to the revealed will of God in His Holy Word. The glory that we receive through Christ is manifested in corporate oneness and expression of the Triune God. It still shocks me to think that the Father loves us even as He does Christ Jesus!

He gave His Son His life, His nature, His glory, and fullness that Jesus might fully express Him. In turn the Father loves us by giving believers in the same way His life, His nature, His glory, and His fullness that we might reveal the Father's love as well... imparted to us, and through us to others. We are to be the ultimate corporate expression of the Triune God consummated in the New Jerusalem, the **Zion** of God, and continuing in divine glory throughout eternity future.

The world system ingrained in most of humanity prevents them from hearing the truth, and experiencing any conviction of sin; much less the righteousness and judgment of the Holy Spirit. Those who repent and turn to face a new direction are all going against the tide, but it is well worth it for we then get to swim in the deep things of God for all eternity. **Deep truly calls unto deep.** The love of the Father and the burden of His heart for His called out ones gives each of us a continuing sense of this eternal love. It compels us to go and do what we must... bring into the Kingdom all those who are ordained for salvation, and called to freely express God and His glory now and for all eternity.



### ***Chapter 17- ...For Such a Time as This...***

There have been for the last twenty years at least, prophetic voices that have spoken in Holy Spirit orchestrated unison. Men and women of God with the five-fold ministry anointing have each made bold proclamations concerning the next phase of church development toward the ultimate goal of the preparation of the Bride of Christ. If you go to my blog at [zionsgate.wordpress.com](http://zionsgate.wordpress.com) and check out the **blogroll** you will find more than fifty separate ministries linked. I highly value each one for their cutting edge and anointed contribution to the effort that we must all share to fully enter into the Lord Jesus Christ's Kingdom and into its power for transformation by the Holy Spirit.

I cannot speak too highly of the anointed messages and broken heart of compassion for the condition of the church in America, which is expressed in the encyclopedic website that is facilitated by Ron McGatlin. [www.openheaven.com](http://www.openheaven.com) has been and remains one of my favorite sites for tapping the pulse of what the Holy Spirit is saying to the church today. Permission was graciously granted by Elder Ron for these citations.

This ministry and its resources are so penetrating, that I have been stripped, convicted, and challenged with the sober sense of looking into the eyes of a Holy God who spends much too much time grieving over our woeful condition. This is changing and will change dynamically as we respond to ***The Call of God by His Holy Spirit***.

Please note that these excerpts are only small portions of a vastly more in-depth series of teachings directly relating to the Kingdom of Heaven touching earth... **through us!** Please read these words prayerfully and ponder their significance for your life and position in the Kingdom as a prince or princess in the household of the King of Glory. To whom much is given much is required... therefore let us respond soberly to the truths and decrees of all the Apostolic and Prophetic voices that are speaking the Heart of God to His Glorious Church. Test all things; hold to that which is true (**Please** seek-and strive to live out **1Thessalonians 5:15-25** daily).

**This is our Calling... this is our Destiny!**

Excerpts from **An Urgent and Crucial Time** by *Ron McGatlin*

There possibly has never been a more crucial season. The people who are called by the name of God are carrying the ultimate potential for the blessing or the devastation of nations and multitudes. The church is pregnant with a colossal worldwide awakening. The birthing time is upon us. The enormous transition will be made or it will be missed. At least as far as this season in history is concerned. The magnitude of the potentially earth changing awakening cannot be overstated.

The warnings are screaming forth that the transition must be made now. Trumpets are blowing, the earth is shouting and groaning, the nations are trembling and God is speaking.

The seriousness and potential of the season demands humble boldness. Humble people of God must rise up and boldly lift the standard of the Holy One. Leaders, it is not time to continue on as we have been. We must be boldly honest and move with uncompromising resolve into the reality of the work of the Spirit dissolving weak religious ways and bringing forth the powerful works of God...

...With tears the Spirit of Christ speaks from the high hill with outstretched arms, again dripping with precious blood, calling, calling, calling, "Turn, look up and come up here. Turn to Me and let Me love you, let Me save you from your own life of twisted ways, that lead to devastation and death. Come and experience all My Father and I have prepared for you... prepare to become sons of My Father, kings and priests with Me. Now is the time. Make the transition in this day for night soon comes when you can do nothing."...

...There is a people coming forth that love God above all else and will give all they have and all they are to become the truly humble and holy people of God. Purity and holiness are again becoming the goal of life for the Kingdom of God people coming forth in the world today....

...God is poised and ready to hear our sincere and desperate prayer for worldwide awakening. His ear is leaned forward listening for our prayer of turning from our ways unto Him and His ways. In painful long-suffering He waits. The angels await His signal to pour out their censures of golden liquid fire upon an awakening repentant people. God rejoices in the return

of a prodigal world. He takes no pleasure and is greatly saddened in the devastation of the wayward....

...Much of the church has been and is spiritually asleep. Eyes and ears are closed to the Kingdom of God and to the reality of the condition of our world. Many who should be leaders have become discouraged to the point of giving up and walking away from the sleeping church. We must wake up! It is time for a spiritual awakening that will lead to transition from where we have been as a church. There must be a transition to the reality of the supernatural presence of God moving in and through the people of God. There needs to be a transition from a church-emphasis type of church to a Kingdom of God type of church, no longer a man-centered, man pleasing church, but becoming truly God-centered and God focused worship in all areas of life....

**...There is a place of repentance before us. I believe, a season of intercession and repentance, turning to God and seeking Him. He will be found. There may or may not be another season like this one. Call a solemn assembly, turn fully to Him, pray desperately for your people, your nation, the nations of the world to be awakened and do not stop until it comes or until He says the season is finished...**

This is a transition that must come. A shift to the reality of God's direct leadership and the laying down of our systems and traditions of weak ways. A transition to the reality of true holiness in the lives of His people. A shift to true humility and purity of heart. A shift to the power of God moving in every meeting or encounter. A shift to intimate saturation in the Holy Spirit and prayer that changes us and the world around us.

**We have this time to awaken and make this transition. Let's let God take over and make the shift now.**

Excerpts from **We Are Kingdom Potential** by *Ron McGatlin*

You are Kingdom potential... Jesus said, "The Kingdom of God is within you." The potential for the Kingdom of Heaven on earth is within people. Within the Body and Bride of Christ is the potential to save ("**sozo**" heal and deliver) the world. The Spirit of God implanting the life of Christ Jesus within His people there is the potential for the Kingdom of God on earth.

However, for the most part we don't really believe that. We are still in need of fully receiving a revelation of '**Christ in you the hope of glory**' (Col.1:27)...

**Luke 17:29-21...** *"The Kingdom of God does not come with observation; nor will they say, 'See here!' or 'See there!' For indeed, the Kingdom of God is within you."*

**Phil. 2:13...** *for it is God who works in you both to will and to do for His good pleasure.*

The Kingdom of God in earth is a divine-human partnership. It is redeemed earthlings filled with the heavenly, divine Spirit of Christ Jesus. The reality of the powerful presence of Christ abiding within God's people by the Holy Spirit is the potential for the love and power of the Kingdom of God from Heaven on earth.

**We struggle to believe the words of Christ Jesus because we have been taught differently...**

...The condition of the masses today is the result of the teaching of knowledge, morals, and values apart from the wisdom of God.

The world is lost through false education. Secular humanism was trained into the western world. Higher learning became [secular] humanized instead of spiritualized and trained young people away from truth into false values. They were led away from God and His ways to human governance of life.

This left the door open for lying spirits to invade with their false reality...

...That, my friends, is why we have difficulty believing the truth of the Kingdom of Light- the gospel of the Kingdom of God. We have been trained in false concepts much more than we may think. Churches have been limited by the affects of this kind of training as well...

**If Christ and His Kingdom are a major focus of life and not merely a part of everyday life and education, the child will become an adult that can release the Kingdom of God from within to the world. Preach and teach the Kingdom of God in wisdom demonstrated by power and love.**

Excerpts from **Refined by Love and Fire** by Ron McGatlin

In the passing church emphasis age, we seem to have a bit of a religious barrier or cushion between the practical reality of our lives and the spiritual holiness of God. It is like we were lightly aware of God's holiness and our lack of not being truly holy and pure in our daily living. To many of us this did not seem to be too big of a problem. Someway, we reasoned that we were about as close to being holy as we could be under the circumstances of our lives.

**In the Kingdom emphasis age, this has greatly changed.** The barrier or cushion is completely passing away leaving us to realize we are uncovered and open before Him and the world. We are becoming acutely aware of what God and perhaps some others have seen all along. Our impure mixture is becoming evident to us. I am not speaking personally here but as a broad spectrum of the church.

***I Peter 1:15-16... but as He who called you is holy, you also be holy in all your conduct, because it is written, "Be holy, for I am holy."***

The passionate love of God is being manifest in His presence, drawing us to leave all our other gods and come fully unto Him. **His love purifies us if we run after Him leaving all our religious and worldly treasures. His Kingdom in us is the pearl of great price.** The treasure hidden in the field of His Kingdom is living intimately with Christ for which we quickly sell all to obtain...

**The purifying, refining fire of God is increasingly burning in the earth to destroy and dissolve the wood, hay, and stubble of impure and unclean worldly mixtures from His Kingdom.**

**The choice is ours now.** We can respond to His intimate pure love drawing (wooing) us by running after Him and leaving all else, or we can fail to respond and wait to endure the fires of purification burning the things we sought to hold on to. We will suffer a great sense of pain and loss if we do not willingly leave all to run after Him. Our treasures will be burned and the things we lived for will go up in smoke in the refining fire...

...Beyond the fires of refinement, we will praise Him and draw near to Him and His love. Experiencing the joy of life with Him in the beauties of real holiness will quickly heal us of all the pain of loss from the fire. We will

not again long for our earthly treasures and pleasures. We will have no appetite for the things of the spirit of the world and religion. As we then truly delight in Him, all our earthly and heavenly needs will be fully met.

**Most people, including many westernized Christians, have been robbed of the beauties of holiness.**

God desires to bring His people closer to Himself. He is changing our focus from carnal pleasures and worldly good things to pure holy oneness with Him as His sons [and daughters]. Many have bought into fallacious concepts of delighting their souls in worldly pleasures instead of delighting in the Lord.

**Psalm 37:4-6... *Delight yourself also in the LORD, and He shall give you the desires of your heart. Commit your way to the LORD, trust also in Him, and He shall bring it to pass. He shall bring forth your righteousness as the light, and your justice as the noonday...***

There is an awakening coming soon. Some are prophesying this fall ['07 when this word was initially given] as the beginning of an explosive awakening bringing purification and holiness leading to real oneness with God. Many people and groups are praying desperately for a move of God. This awakening could be a major step toward the consecration of many as priests and kings.

Excerpts from **His Love Call to His Bride** by Ron McGatlin

**The reality of being spiritually in love with Jesus is the force that will change the world.**

Once we understand that our natural affections and romantic feelings are a replica of the spiritual- for making us aware of our relationship with God, the door is opened to the most fulfilling life with God possible in the world...

...Man was created to become the spiritual mate to Spirit God. Human beings are the only beings in all creation formed in the image and likeness of God and suitable to be the object of His passionate love. The spiritual Bride is being formed from the Body of Christ just as Adam's

mate was built up from his body. The longing of God for His mate is like the longing in mankind—His replicated image and likeness...

...We must experience what it means to keep [y]our eyes upon Jesus, look full into His wonderful face and fall in love with Him alone...

...The world will be changed, not by armies and not by religion, but by the pure holy passionate love of Jesus flowing into His people and out to the dry thirsty people of the world. There is no other way. The passionate love of God that draws us into deep spiritual romantic love with Him and consumes our hearts and lives completely will conquer the [whole] world. [end of 'Open Heaven' excerpts]

As I, Santos, mentioned these are just a few insightful portions of the more extensive and profound full essays that our dear brother Ron and other contributors have posted on the **Open Heaven** website. Please go often to [www.openheaven.com](http://www.openheaven.com) and feast on the 'meaty' food that this Elder and so many other wonder-filled brothers and sisters share.

Without exaggeration- the **Kingdom Growth Guides** (see the green link on the left panel of the homepage) are some of the most precious teachings I have been privileged to study in depth; they are truly transforming.

## Heaven Touching Earth- Part I

Many years ago the Lord impressed me with my life scripture- the verses that I was to live out during my days in this mortal coil. The address is imprinted on one of my numerous bibles, and is indelibly imprinted on my heart.

**II Timothy 4:1-5...** *I solemnly charge you before God and Christ Jesus, who is to judge the living and the dead by His appearing and His kingdom: Proclaim the word; be ready in season and out of season; convict, rebuke, exhort with all longsuffering and teaching. For the time will come when they will not tolerate the healthy teaching; but according to their own lusts they will heap up to themselves teachers, having itching ears, and*

*they will turn away their ear from the truth and will be turned aside to myths. But you, be sober in all things, suffer evil, do the work of an evangelist, fully accomplish your ministry.*

**(NOTE: Five-Fold Ministry defined)**

Not only does the world need to hear the gospel of the Kingdom to get saved, healed, delivered, and enter into the abundant life promised by the Lord Jesus Christ himself... but the church needs mentoring into the present truths of the organic word of God. This is the purpose of this project and the books to come in this series.

**Hebrews 4:12...** *For the word of God is living and operative and sharper than any two-edged sword, and piercing even to the dividing of soul and spirit and of joints and marrow; and able to discern the thoughts and intentions of the heart.*

Yet I must include this disclaimer-

**I John 2:27...** *And as for you, the anointing which you have received from Him abides in you, and you have no need that anyone teach you; but as His anointing teaches you concerning all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, abide in Him.*

This exhortation from the Apostle John does not contradict the ministry of teaching, which is one of the five-fold ascension gifts that our Lord gave to the church. What it does do is put the responsibility for accurately receiving and weighing carefully all instruction in this life- on the hearers, whether spiritual or secular through the watchful eye of the Holy Spirit.

I have carefully followed the prophetic teaching ministry of Rick Joyner since 1989 when my pastor at the time encouraged me to read **The Harvest**. This book spoke of a hopeful future of a glorious church winning the world of lost souls, by falling deeply in love with our Savior. Since then I have read some 15 books or more that are available through the ministry ([www.morningstarministries.org](http://www.morningstarministries.org)). I have also read every single issue of the quarterly **Morning Star Journal** since its inception in 1990. This segment will focus on the great service that this ministry has done to the Body of Christ in their focus in 2006 on the Kingdom of our Lord Jesus Christ. MorningStar Ministries and staff have graciously given permission for these insightful and anointed quotations; my gratitude is unending.



**Morning Star Journal** Vol. 16: 1-4 are:

- **Living in The Kingdom**
- **Kingdom Authority**
- **Kingdom Power**
- **The Gospel of the Kingdom**

Part I will cover the first two issues; Part II will have excerpts from the last two journals.

By contacting the ministry through their website you can purchase the entire set for a nominal fee. Each volume is 112 pages in length, and the excerpts that are quoted are a glimmer of the serious teaching that is available for edification, exhortation, comfort, and warning. On the website there are special features such as Rick's **Word for the Week**, **Special Bulletins**, resources available, **The Nehemiah Project** information, and their streaming audio and video library. I do not receive any compensation for recommending this outstanding ministry; my reward is knowing that some will follow through and via this and other links that are listed in the resources appendix, they will grow up as we all need...

**Ephesians 4:13-16...** *Until we all arrive at the oneness of the faith and of the full knowledge of the Son of God, at a full-grown man, at the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ, that we may be no longer little children tossed by waves and carried about by every wind of teaching in the sleight of men, in craftiness with a view to a system of error. But holding the truth in love, we may grow up into Him in all things, who is the Head, Christ, out from whom all the Body, being joined together and being knit together through every joint of the rich supply and through the operation in the measure of each one part, causes the growth of the Body unto the building up of itself in love.*

**Morning Star Journal- Vol. 16 no. 1 'Living in the Kingdom'**

Excerpts from article- *The Kingdom is Supernatural* by Robin McMillan- (8 pages)

...When we teach on healing, it should be accompanied not only by people being healed, but by the increased ability of others to minister healing. Our ministry should produce others who minister effectively in each realm of service, whether in the evangelistic realm, the prophetic realm, or any other one.

**C.S. Lewis' Perspective**

Down through the ages, some great defenders of the faith honored and defended the supernatural. C.S. Lewis, one of the twentieth century church's greatest thinkers, often wrote about the importance of the supernatural aspects of our faith. Many know him for his precise and insightful arguments for fundamental Christianity, but have overlooked his thoughts on the supernatural. In his mind, fundamental Christianity and the supernatural were inseparable. He wrote in defense of his faith:

*I have been suspected of being what is called a Fundamentalist. That is because I never regarded any narrative as unhistorical simply on the ground that it includes the miraculous (**Reflections on the Psalms**, page 109).*

In another place he wrote:

*Do not attempt to water Christianity down. There must be no pretense that you can have it with the supernatural left out. So far as I can see Christianity is precisely the one religion from which the miraculous cannot be separated. You must frankly argue for supernaturalism from the very outset (**God in the Dock, 'Christian Apologetics'** 1945, page 99)...*

...Many believe that miracles were exclusively reserved for an earlier era and do not believe that God desires to move in power today. This type of unbelief has eroded the effectiveness of the church in our generation. Our nation is in its present fallen state, in part, because the church has not consistently and publicly demonstrated God's power. Many trapped in sexual immorality, drug addiction, and other sinful lifestyles need personal power encounters with the Lord to be delivered. We must not

only believe that the supernatural events in the Bible happened—we must demonstrate that same kind of power today...

**Robin McMillan** is currently the pastor of MorningStar Fellowship Church at the Heritage International Ministries (H.I.M.) facilities near Charlotte, North Carolina

Excerpts from article- *The Foundation of the Kingdom* by Rick Joyner (9 pages)

...As the Bride of Christ, the church has infinite importance. However, it is also a means of fulfilling the ultimate purpose of the gospel, which is as Peter stated in Acts 3:21-

**“the restoration of all things.”** This is the restoration of everything lost by the Fall, which will only be accomplished by the coming of His Kingdom to the earth. However, the Bride will rule with Him in His Kingdom and must be prepared for this.

This entire church age has been for the purpose of calling and preparing the Bride who will rule with Him in the Kingdom. It is good and right to understand that our purpose is to prepare for what He gave us to pray for, the coming of His Kingdom. The way we can best do that is by helping His bride to “make herself ready.” The building of true, New Testament church life, the way that the Lord intended for it to be, is the foundation upon which the Kingdom will be built. The gospel of the Kingdom, which is yet to be preached in these last days, will be preached by a church that is representative of His Kingdom, exhibiting its nature and power...

... It is for this reason that the apostolic burden is, as the apostle Paul stated, to be in labor **“until Christ is formed in you”** (Galatians 4:19). Paul was not laboring for them to come into a certain form or pattern for church life, but something much greater. His devotion was to see Christ formed within them. This is much more than just establishing church government or a framework for meetings and ministry. These things are good and necessary, but the apostolic ministry is much more than that. Even the most glorious temple is of little use if God is not in it. The apostolic burden is to see the ‘manifest presence’ of Christ in His people....

**Rick Joyner** is the founder, executive director, and senior pastor of MorningStar Fellowship Church.. Well known author of more than thirty books... he also oversees MorningStar's School of Ministry, Fellowship of Ministries, and Fellowship of Churches.

Excerpts from the article- *The Power of Prophetic Prayer* by Becky Fischer (5 pages)

...There seems to be little doubt—this current youth generation is about to make a big mark on the world, both from a spiritual and a natural standpoint. And so we wait for the fulfillment of the prophecies. As we do, there is a recurring thought in my mind that won't go away. It concerns the little bit I know about revivals of the past, and the nature of prophetic words. Like a number of the great revivals, the great Welsh Revival was led by a very young man, Evan Roberts, and most of the workers were even younger, some even children. History tells us that he and his younger brother and sister prayed earnestly and faithfully for revival in Wales years before it happened.

The landmark Azusa Street Revival came the same way. After a long season of fasting, and relentless prayer, the greatest Pentecostal outpouring in modern history erupted and is still reverberating around the world. It was birthed out of a desperate spiritual hunger for the Spirit of God...

...The point is, for the most part, it appears many revivals are birthed out of focused, deliberate, and unrelenting prayer, and are not the result of some type of spiritual spontaneous combustion or an attitude of what the old song said, "whatever will be will be."

Prophecy works in a similar way. When one receives a prophetic word from the Lord, it will not automatically come to pass just because it was spoken. To be sure, it is very important to the processes of God that prophetic words are released, as it then gives Him legal access to fulfill them on the earth. There has to be agreement and participation from us on some level before they will come to pass...

... In his book, *Transforming Children Into Spiritual Champions*, George Barna ([www.barna.org](http://www.barna.org)) spent time discussing churches that had the greatest success ratios in watching their children grow into teens and

young adults who remained committed, engaged, and excited about their faith in Christ. He wrote, *"The most important resource, we believe, was the amazing amount of prayer for children **and** parents that was evident at the most effective ministries to children."* In other words, it should be no surprise that the churches and ministries where children have been bathed in prayer, they have come out the strongest spiritually.

It is crucial that we stop considering children the church of the future—their time is now! When we only think of them and speak of them as the church of the future, we fail to let them be who they are now. Then it is too easy to become mentally complacent thinking we have plenty of time to act before that day comes. It is not about 'us now' and 'them later'. We need a completely new paradigm shift in our thinking.

We need to understand this about the Kingdom of God being established on this earth and it happens as one generation purposely begins to model, mentor, disciple, and train the next generation. And in that mix must be deliberate and concerted prayer over this generation if the prophecies are ever going to come to pass on a worldwide scale. It is not going to sovereignly happen by itself.

There is a place where we need to do something with what has been spoken over this generation. God is waiting for us to act. There is something about our words that releases God's words, and something about our words that opens up the heavens so God can release angels to do what He said He would do...

**Becky Fischer** is the director of **Kids in Ministry International** which focuses on training children and children's workers around the world for the work of the ministry; she lives in North Dakota.

Excerpt from article- *The Kingdom of God Is Coming* by David White (7 pages)

...A truly apostolic church is arising in this hour which will advance the Kingdom of God upon the earth in an unprecedented manner. A fresh understanding of what it means to "be sent" is coming back to the church and as a result, cities and even entire regions of the world will be changed forever. We will see Revelation 11:15 beginning to come to pass, **"The**

***kingdoms of this world have become the kingdoms of our Lord and of His Christ, and He shall reign forever and ever!"***

Before this will be said of the kingdoms of this world, we can expect it to be said of His own people. We do not have to wait until the age to come to live in His Kingdom—we are called to live in it now, to demonstrate it, and to expand its territory until the King Himself comes...

*David White is a pastor and founder of the Mobile School of the Spirit. He has joined the ministry team at MorningStar Ministries where he is developing and assisting in the leadership of **Knights of the Cross** a children's and youth ministry. He also actively travels as a conference speaker.*

Excerpts from the article- *Birth Pangs of the Kingdom* by Rick Joyner (9 pages)

... The Lord made it clear in His Word that if we are to partake of His life we must also partake of His death ***"that they who live should no longer live for themselves but for Him..."*** (II Corinthians 5:15). Any other teaching is a false gospel and an enemy of the cross. Death separates the things that are natural from the things that are spiritual. Again, to have a resurrection, there must first be a death. If we want to walk in the resurrection life of Jesus daily, we must be willing to lay down our lives for Him daily. As the Lord Jesus Himself testifies:

***'If anyone wishes to come after Me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow me. For whoever wishes to save his life shall lose it; but whoever loses his life for My sake shall find it'*** (Matthew 16:24-25)

### **The Liberty of Death**

Because Israel had to cross the Jordan River to enter their Promised Land, this also speaks of how we must enter into the baptism of the death of the cross before we can attain the promises. This is where the church has now come: We are at a crossing. If we enter into the true baptism, the crucified life, which means that we live each day for Him and not just ourselves, we will start to possess all of the promises of God for His people.

We must also keep in mind that death is the greatest liberation we can ever know. The devil uses fear to bind just as the Lord uses faith in the truth to set people free. What does a dead man fear? If we are dead to this world, there is nothing the world can do to us. It is impossible for a dead man to have fears of failure, fears of rejection, or even fear of the dark. The degree that any fear still has its grip on us is in direct relation to the degree we have failed to go to the cross. The cross will set us free.

A dead man does not lust, covet, feel anger, want revenge, or even feel lonely. There is no freedom that we can ever have greater than that which comes from dying to this world so as to be alive to Christ. This is what Israel learned from their first baptism—the crossing of the Red Sea...

When Israel entered into this baptism in the Red Sea it would result in the destruction of their enemies who had kept them in bondage for so long. As Pharaoh and his army is a biblical model of satan and his hordes who seek to keep God's people in bondage, we see that baptism is the one place where they cannot follow us, and will result in their destruction. When Israel entered into this baptism, they were to never see those enemies again, and many of the things which have bound us for so long will likewise be destroyed when we enter the true baptism—the crucified life.

### **The Second Baptism**

So does the Jordan River represent a second baptism? In a sense it does, though this is not to imply that there needs to be a second ritual of baptism. It reveals how we must go back to the basics, review them, and recommit to them, before we cross over to start possessing our Promised Land. For this reason the church can expect a great re-emphasis on the cross. There is a baptism when we leave Egypt and a baptism when we enter the Promised Land. This is a message that the cross is both the beginning and the end of our journey. The cross sets us free from the world (Egypt) and is the door to entering into our inheritance in Christ.

The wise are forever mindful that the cross is everything. However, the cross does not just represent death—it is the door to resurrection life, which is represented by the Promised Land. One

basic difference between these two baptisms is that in the Red Sea baptism the enemy was chasing Israel and was destroyed because the people entered into their baptism. The second baptism represented by the Jordan River begins our pursuit of the enemy, which is to drive him out of

our land. Once we cross the Jordan River, we are going to go from being attacked by the enemy to being the attackers of his strongholds.

We have come to that time...

***Morning Star Journal- Vol. 16, no. 2 'Kingdom Authority'***

Excerpts from article- *When the Kingdom Comes* by Steve Thompson (7 pages)

...many in the body of Christ have this same attitude of passively looking for the Kingdom of God to come.

There are two opposing viewpoints among those who look for this type of miraculous intervention. One anticipates a sovereign, sweeping revival that will stem the tide of wickedness now dominating our society. The other scenario has the Lord Himself coming to rescue a powerless church out of this present evil age. These are actually similar, emphasizing a dependence on God moving independently of us rather than through us, and our faithful, day to day taking ground for His Kingdom.

While we would all gladly welcome a revival or rescue that comes independent of us, and the Lord has chosen to do this occasionally, this is actually not His usual mode of operation. Our tendency to look for the spectacular, instead of working with the Lord to bring steady, consistent changes in us and our society, may be the single greatest hindrance to the Kingdom of God coming to where He has placed us....

...The idea of a gradual, progressive manifestation of the Kingdom is contrary to our modern concepts of progress. While the world values immediate results, the Kingdom comes progressively, and we must understand this in order to see it come to fruition.

**Mark 4:28- *First the blade, then the ear, after that the full corn in the ear.***



Many people have sown their spiritual seeds, seen the blade or the ear spring up, and mistakenly thought it was the full corn in the ear. When they tried to harvest the fruit, it was not mature. They became disappointed and lost heart. The Kingdom not only comes gradually... it comes progressively...

... When we think of God, most of us think in terms of miraculous, dramatic, and immediate intervention. However, we need to realize that there is often a gradual process of seeing our society change systematically. The same is usually true with our churches, and often even with ourselves in the things in which we need to change. **If we do not learn these truths, we may miss the supernatural because we are looking for the spectacular...**

***Steve Thompson** is the associate director of MorningStar Fellowship Church, and oversees the prophetic ministries for all of the MorningStar churches. A gifted teacher and prophetic minister, he travels extensively here and abroad as a conference speaker. His outstanding book **You Can All Prophecy** is available directly from the ministry website.*

Excerpts from article- *A One Thousand Year Plan* by Rick Joyner (13 pages)

### **...A Lasting Foundation**

Living a healthy, effective, Christian life requires us to have an understanding of the past and a vision for the future, but to live in the present. Of course, we should have this knowledge and vision for ourselves and our families. If we are called to have authority in a local church, we should have this understanding and vision for our local church. If we are called to have authority in our city, we should have this knowledge and vision on that level. Likewise, as we are called and being prepared to rule and reign with Christ over the age to come, we should begin now to have both knowledge and vision for that age.

It is right to have a yearning for the return of the Lord and His coming Kingdom. However, we need to understand how His coming Kingdom should affect our plans now, and therefore allow us to live with a prophetic plan for the future. This should enable us to **plan with**

**strategy and vision for our children, and future generations if necessary, until the Lord returns....**

... One of the tragic failures of many great Christian movements in the last couple of centuries was that they became so focused on the imminent return of the Lord, they failed to plan or prepare for the future in a practical way until His Kingdom comes. This has resulted in a terrible cost to those movements and future generations...

...The blindness of the church has not just been in regard to prophetic vision, but in regard to our history as well. To not see in either direction is spiritual blindness. The failure to see our history is a blindness that causes stumbling as the proverb states **"those who do not remember history are doomed to repeat it."** Every spiritual generation to date seems to have made the same mistakes as the previous ones. This cycle must end. It will end when we have been delivered of our blindness to our history. Many of the eschatologies developed in recent times would not be possible if the church had even a cursory knowledge of history. Blindness in relation to the past has caused a distortion of our vision for the future. A clear vision of the past is needed to have an accurate vision of the future and an accurate understanding of biblical prophecy...

...I do think the Scripture is clear that the last generation will be the greatest in many ways, but it is a terrible and blinding arrogance that compels us to believe it has to be us. How much more could we accomplish if we humbly accepted the role of preparing the way for those who may be greater?...

...The much maligned Charismatic movement [has] produced more salvations, more missionaries, more churches, and more church movements than any other move of God in history. It has also had some of the more memorable mistakes, but they were not really any worse than the foolishness that manifested in almost every other movement in history, and far less worse than some...

...but there will be a generation who will not do this, because it will have had the grace and wisdom to honor their fathers and mothers by studying history.

To build a clear prophetic vision on a clear historical and sound biblical perspective takes time, as well as devotion so profound that it must be a lifestyle. Granted, few seem prone to do this, and the emerging generation seems even more addicted to the convenience and sound bites

that breed superficiality, but there will be some in the midst of it who are of a different spirit...

...The Scriptures teach that Jesus will manifest Himself in an unprecedented fullness in His church, by His *Parousia*, which will be His very presence and glory being revealed in His temple, **before** His physical manifestation. It will actually be His presence manifested in this way that will cause many of the events prophesied to happen at the end of the age...

...One of the most worn-out phrases about Christians is how they tend to be so heavenly-minded that they do not do any earthly good. This may be true of a few, but the greater problem is that many Christians have become so earthly-minded that they are not doing much for heaven or earth. A proper devotion to the things that are eternal is required for having the most effective, practical impact on our own times. We need to live in Heaven and walk on the earth daily. We can only do this as we begin to see, enter, and then inherit His Kingdom...

Excerpts from article- *Paradoxes of the Kingdom* by Rick Joyner (17 pages)

I have read the Bible through between twenty and thirty times, and have done many additional studies of its content. I have not yet found one of the contradictions that so many claim to be there. However, when I first began my study of Scriptures, there were a number of issues that did seem to be contradictions, but further study inevitably brought a resolution that would only confirm to me that the genius behind the Bible was far beyond human reasoning....

... Of course, spiritual blindness cannot be lifted by mere human intelligence or study. Only the Holy Spirit can open blind spiritual eyes, so even if the greatest genius studies the Bible, he or she may be blind to its true message. That is why it is almost fruitless to argue with skeptics who **want** to disbelieve.

However, there is good skepticism. Good skepticism wants to believe, but will not accept shallow or insufficient evidence. We are told that the Bereans in:

***Acts 17:11-12- Now these were more noble-minded than those in Thessalonica, for they received the word with great eagerness, examining the Scriptures daily, to see whether these things were so. Many of them therefore believed...***

Such souls were obviously rare then and are now, but they are treasures in the Kingdom which can bring much strength to the body of Christ because truth is our most basic commodity...

...one of the greatest paradoxes in biblical prophecy that few have navigated well since the first century is how we are supposed to look for the imminent return of the Lord, and plan for the future with strategy and vision. However, to be properly balanced in our worldview we need to be able to do both.

There is wisdom in having an expectation for the imminent return of the Lord. It is important to have the wisdom to 'keep oil in our lamps' so that we are not counted with the foolish virgins (see **Matthew 25:1-13**). Wisdom keeps us focused on a heavenly solution to the world's problems rather than a humanistic one. It is also obedience to the Lord, Who exhorted us to do this so that we will not be surprised by His coming.

There is also wisdom in understanding that the Lord can delay His coming for quite a long time yet, even past our lifetime, and still not violate His Word. Though the signs of the last days are more abundant now than ever; every generation has thought this. To date every generation has been wrong about seeing Him return in their lifetime. However, there will be a generation who will not be wrong about this...

...We must answer the question of how to practically do both, yearning for His return, yet building for the future...

Excerpts from article- *Apostles and Elders Are Coming* by Rick Joyner (10 pages)

One of the great needs in the church today is for apostles and elders. More may be claiming these titles than ever before, but few, if any, measure up to the biblical stature of these high callings. Though some of the great missionaries and teachers in the church age may be with us now, there is still a lack of true apostles and true elders. However, true apostles and elders are coming...

### **...Inheriting the Kingdom**

Some see a distinction between seeing the Kingdom, entering the Kingdom, and actually inheriting the Kingdom. This has been likened to entering the Outer Court, the Holy Place, and then into the very presence of the Lord in the Holy of Holies [in the Tabernacle and Temple]. This could also be likened to knowing Jesus as the Way, then the Truth, and then ultimately as our Life. Whether we accept this or not is not as important as having a life of progressive growth in the Lord. However, we do need to see that the coming of the Kingdom is a restoration of true New Testament church life that is progressive.

We cannot have true church life as it is intended without true church government. The church is the vessel through which the Kingdom is going to be preached, and the way for it to be prepared is by our demonstrating it. Without true church life, we may have the most accurate doctrines about the Kingdom, but we will not be a part of it. The Kingdom or the reign of the King is coming to the church first, through His people. We must live in the Kingdom now.

### **Heaven Touching Earth- Part II**

#### **Morning Star Journal- Vol. 16, no. 3 'Kingdom Power'**

Excerpt from article- *Praise: The Disposition of the Kingdom of Heaven* by Robin McMillan (8 pages)

Our fundamental purpose in life is to live to the praise of God's glory. Having the attitude of praise is so essential that Paul identified it as **"the will of God"** for every person alive.

**I Thessalonians 5:16-18**... *Rejoice always, pray without ceasing, in everything give thanks; for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus for you.*

God's will is clear for everyone; always rejoice, pray without stopping, and be thankful to God in every situation...

## God Inhabits Praise

God not only inhabits heaven, He inhabits praise as well. Psalm 22:3 reveals that God dwells in the midst of praising people, sitting enthroned upon their very praises:

***But You are Holy, enthroned in the praises of Israel.***

In His divine condescension, God has allowed us to provide a platform for His presence. As we praise, He makes us His practical habitation, reigning in our midst, seated and carried by our heartfelt praises...

## Power of Appreciated Weakness

**Psalm 8:2** is another eye-opening example of the power of praise:

*Out of the mouth of babes and nursing infants You have **ordained strength**, because of Your enemies, that You may silence the enemy and the avenger.*

Jesus also quoted this same Psalm in **Matthew 21:16**...

*Out of the mouth of babes and nursing infants You have **perfected praise**, because of Your enemies, that You may silence the enemy and the avenger.*

What the Old Testament translates as **ordained strength**, the New Testament renders as **perfected praise**; both aspects of the original language intended by the author of Psalm 8. Here in this Psalm is the revelation that God uses the weakest of instruments to combat the pride of the evil one. Out of the mouth of the weakest according to age and helplessness, babes and nursing infants, God ordained strength and perfects praise. What could infuriate the god of this age more than for Almighty God to use such weakness to confound him and declare His defeat? [**see 1 Corinthians 1:25-31**]...

...Not many wise, not many mighty, not many noble have been chosen by God. For God has chosen the foolish, the weak, the base things, the things which are despised, even the things that are not... so that no one can boast in themselves. Therefore, rise up, oh man, rise up, oh woman! Rise up, weakest of the weak and take your place in the army of God. It is time to praise the Lord. It is the disposition of the Kingdom of Heaven.

Excerpt from article- *Your Authority in Christ* by Steve Thompson (7 pages)

...Although this may sound like an outrageous and even heretical idea, God is not in control of everything on earth. While He is undoubtedly and clearly able to enforce His will at any point, He has limited His dealings in the earth to working through mankind. The idea that God is in control of everything on the earth is not only an unbiblical concept—it may be the greatest hindrance to God actually gaining control of the earth which exists today.

### **The Earth is Ours**

You and I have a greater calling than most of us realize. We are not just called to make a difference in the earth—we are called to rule it. Although many Christians may recoil at the boldness and seeming arrogance of that statement, it is truer than we can imagine. We are called by God to rule in the affairs of earth, not to just stand by and watch it fall into further decay....

**Psalm 115:16 KJV**— *Heaven, even the heavens, are the Lord's: but the earth hath he given to the children of men.*

According to the Psalmist, the earth does not belong to God; it belongs to mankind because God has given it to us. Although we were made lower than the angels, God has crowned us with amazing authority. Although it seems outrageous at first glance, the truth is that God has made Himself dependent on man in His dealings in the earth, because He has given man authority in the earth. God will do nothing on the earth, unless He does it through a person. This was God's original plan and it has never changed....

... God's design was for the government of earth to be carried out through men and women. Mankind was the crown of God's creation, reflecting His glory and exhibiting His dominion in the earth. In Adam, God invested dominion over the earth. Mankind was forever set as the governing link between God and the earth....

...God has provided us with all we need in Christ, but He will not do our work for us. He has provided the authority over the enemy through His Son, but we are the body through whom that authority is to be manifested in the earth. Jesus, having all authority on the earth, has left us here as His representatives on the earth. He has empowered us to

bring the message of restoration to mankind and to break the dominion of satan over our society. In reality, it is not God who is allowing the evil to continue in the earth—we are, by not recognizing and utilizing the authority that He has given us in Christ.

While many of us passively wait on the Lord to move in His sovereign timing, He is actually waiting on us to complete our work. Look at Jesus' posture since His ascension:

**Hebrews 10:12-13 NIV**—*But when this priest had offered for all time one sacrifice for sins, He sat down at the right hand of God. Since that time He waits for his enemies to be made His footstool.*

Jesus is waiting for His enemies to be put under His feet. He spoiled powers and principalities, making a public spectacle of them (**see Colossians 2:13-15**), but we are the ones who are called to enforce the victory on the earth. Consider Paul's admonition to the church at Rome:

**Romans 16-20**—*And the God of peace will soon crush satan under your feet. The grace of our Lord Jesus be with you.*

God will crush the enemy, but only under our feet. He has provided the victory, but we must fight the battles, just as God gave the Promised Land to the children of Israel, yet they had to fight to possess it. We must fight to possess that which God has given us in Christ. We must fight for not only what He has given us personally, but what He has given us as an inheritance—the nations (**see Psalm 2:7**).

This authority is invested in Christ Jesus, and we initially access it through the simplest, weakest way that man could ever imagine—prayer. We sit with God, and sitting in His Son, we ask God to move by His Spirit. Whatever we ask, while abiding in God, He will do for us.

**John 15:7-8 KJV**—*If ye abide in me, and my words abide in you, ye shall ask what ye will, and it shall be done unto you. Herein is my Father glorified that ye bear much fruit; so shall ye be my disciples.*

Why would we want to do anything else?...

... Our Lord has all authority over the earth, not from God, but from a man. Since God did not give Satan authority over the earth, then Satan does not have the authority over us that we believe him to have. We are no longer submitted to him. Jesus has broken Satan's headship over our



lives. Our Lord has all authority in heaven and earth, and He is calling us to use our authority to bind the enemy's work and to loose His Kingdom on the earth. We are not waiting on Him to move. He is waiting on us.

Excerpts from article- *The Foundation of the Kingdom* by Rick Joyner (10 pages)

... The church is called to be the light of the world. This means, among other things, we are supposed to have answers to the world's ultimate problems. One of the biggest problems facing the entire world is the lack of justice. This is a matter that the church should be excelling in....

...We are told in:

**Proverbs 24:3-4**—*By wisdom a house is built, and by understanding it is established; and by knowledge the rooms are filled with all precious and pleasant riches.*

Wisdom is basically the ability to judge a matter rightly. It is what ultimately builds every house of God, and not having it is what will lead to its destruction. This has certainly been true in church history....

...We see here that the true intercessor is one who brings justice. The Lord will bring justice to His people and through His people to the earth. If we are going to be a part of preparing the way for the coming of His Kingdom, we must devote ourselves to both righteousness and justice....

[Brother Rick refers to another article in this edition that is more comprehensive in its discussion of the issue at hand. It is entitled *Toward Christian Justice* by 'An Orthodox Jewish Rabbi'... he's anonymous for a significant reason. The 16 page article is very insightful.]

Excerpts from the article- *The Change at Hand: Back to the Future* by Robin McMillan (12 pages)

...segments of the body of Christ will enter a new level of unity in the midst of this spiritual harvest. Alliances and allegiances will be formed in order to harvest the numbers the Lord is calling in. In 1989, the Lord

revealed to me a coming harvest of proportions that would be too broad for any single person or institution to control. It would be like a mighty moving river to which we would need to adapt ourselves. Only the Lord Jesus, the true Head of the church, would be able to lead it. It would take many people working together to fulfill the commission of that day. We are fast approaching that time....

[Brother Robin gives detail of the Welsh Revival, the Revival of 1947 in North America, the Revival in Argentina in 1951... and the fruit of each of these outpourings...]

### **A Biblical Promise for Revival**

**Amos 9** promises a widespread revival in the last days, outlining in prophetic language the vehicle of the revival, characteristics of the revival, and the generation in which it shall occur:

**Amos 9:11-15**—*On that day I will raise up **the Tabernacle of David** which has fallen down, and repair its damages; I will raise up its ruins, and rebuild it as in the days of old; that they may possess the remnant of Edom, and all the Gentiles who are called by My name, says the Lord who does this thing. Behold the days are coming, says the Lord, when the plowman shall overtake the reaper, and the treader of grapes him who sows seed; the mountains shall drip with sweet wine, and all the hills shall flow with it.*

*I will bring back the captives of My people Israel; they shall build the waste cities and inhabit them; they shall plant vineyards and drink wine from them; they shall also make gardens and eat fruit from them. I will plant them in their land, and no longer shall they be pulled up from the land I have given them, says the Lord your God.*

...The restoration of David's Tabernacle is also a sign of this revival and a vehicle of its fulfillment. David once placed the Ark of the Covenant in his backyard in a skin tent. Some say it remained there about thirty-three years. He instituted twenty-four hour praise, worship, and intercession. Many of the songs recorded in the Book of Psalms were ones that were either written by the Levites or recorded as the song of the Lord emerged spontaneously in that place. David's Tabernacle was one, large holy of holies where the glory of God could be seen by anyone who wanted to (see **Psalm 48:1-14**). The Bible tells us that the nations shall be brought to the Lord through that means. [see **Acts 15: 15-18**]

Chapter 17- ...For Such a Time as This...

... God's unchanging word... cannot be rescinded by the enemy. His promises only lie fallow through the lack of faith and cooperation of those to whom they have been given. Thus, the Lord convinced me that this specific promise remains valid and He is waiting for us to lay hold of it by faith...

...What God has promised, He shall surely do. The day that Amos foretold is upon us...

**Morning Star Journal- Vol. 16, no. 4 'The Gospel of The Kingdom'**

Excerpts from Article- *The Kingdom of God* by Geri Keller (8 pages)

**Luke 12:29-32...** *And do not set your heart on what you will eat or drink; do not worry about it. For the pagan world runs after all such things, and your Father knows that you need them. **But seek His Kingdom, and these things will be given to you as well. Do not be afraid, little flock, for your Father has been pleased to give you the Kingdom.***

...The Kingdom of God is nothing exotic or strange, but the Kingdom of God is first of all about the presence of God—where God is, there His Kingdom is also! Where He is at work, where His principles apply and His Spirit blows, there is the Kingdom of God... and we are God's partners and fellow workers. It is through us that he wants to restore this fallen, broken world back under His Lordship and influence, and into His presence...

...Wherever we are, the Kingdom of God begins. Irrespective of how we feel, we reflect God. Wherever we go, the climate and the atmosphere change. The atmosphere of the Kingdom of God can spread in a business or in an entire family, even if individuals there have not met Jesus yet...

... He has placed this world into our hands, saying, ***"You are My friends, you are My sons and daughters, and this world will return to My heart, into My presence, and under My laws, so righteousness, peace, and joy can reign once more, and the people will share their bread with one another again."*** Friends, this is our part. God is helping to push, but you and I, we have our share in this!...

...He wants to use every single one of us for this purpose. Everybody can become a **"history maker."** Maybe we will do only one thing, but it will lead to a breakthrough....

...Our prayers should reach the nations; our prayers should bring release! Then we will look into the newspapers—we will read with the eyes of sons and daughters, and we will start [and continue] praying.

### **Are Our Hearts Filled With Love?**

God has no need for perfect people. It is okay to have rough edges, and we can be off track at times. But we will be measured according to whether the love of God is in our hearts. There is only one thing that will count in eternity, and that is not political correctness. The question is: **Is the Spirit of God in you, the Spirit of the Father, and has He poured His mercy and love into you?** [italics mine: s.g.] The world is waiting for this love, and it is the greatest power! In the power of this love, we will overcome—even death.

*...Father, this is so tremendous. Once again, we receive the blessing of being citizens of the Kingdom, that this new man, this citizen of the Kingdom would arise within us and go through our cities and villages with his face lifted high. Humbly, we want to take hold of the great calling of being citizens of the Kingdom, this world empire, bringing heaven and earth together when all powers and authorities shall join in, with Jesus as the Head.*

[To the glory of God the Father, by the power of the Holy Spirit, in the name of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, amen: s.g.]

Excerpts from article- *Shift Happens* by Larry Randolph (7 pages)

Comfortable people seldom change. It's just too painful. They change only when the pain of their present condition is greater than the pain it takes to change. Knowing this, God is reluctant to deliver us from many of the hurtful situations that overtake us. He will often allow us to simmer in the juices of our discomfort until such time that we are forced to cry out for transformation...

...How does all this apply to the church at large? ...the body of Christ today is going to be confronted with the issue of change. This does not mean that we compromise any absolute truth about the purpose of our destinies, or that we minimize our present reality. It simply means that God wants to use the pain of failure as a tipping point to redirect our focus.

To be truthful, a change of venue is unavoidable from time to time. If we want to fish from the productive side of the boat, we must be willing to shift even when people and circumstances tell us otherwise. If we ignore this call for change, success will elude our best attempts to fill our nets. Most importantly, we can miss our appointment with destiny.

*This article is an excerpt from Larry's new book, **The Coming Shift**, which is available through MorningStar Publications and Ministries. To order, call 1.800.542.0278 or website at [www.MorningStarMinistries.org](http://www.MorningStarMinistries.org)*

Excerpts from article- *The Path to the Kingdom* by Rick Joyner (7 pages)

...The path to life is straight and narrow, with a ditch on either side which will catch those who drift from it in either direction. These ditches are usually some form of legalism on one side and lawlessness on the other.

This tendency to compromise the gospel has always caused far more problems for the church and the faithful than it alleviated by making the gospel seem less offensive or more acceptable to a certain group of people. The end result of this compromise is that it always produces more hypocrites than true converts...

### **The Most Powerful Forces**

Love and truth are the most powerful forces on earth. It is a love for truth that is the foundation of true love. As the Scriptures explain, Truth is a Person, not just accurate facts. Our highest calling, and the highest purpose of man, is to love God. We cannot accomplish our purpose on this earth without building our lives on this devotion first—that we will love God above all things. This is the first and greatest commandment.

The second commandment, to love one another, can never really be accomplished unless our lives are built on keeping the first commandment

first. If we do not love God above all things, we will not love anything or anyone else as we should. If we love the Lord, who is the Truth, we must also love truth...

...At the same time this recovery of truth is taking place, glory and light are released into those who are in the pursuit of truth and light. However, there is increasing darkness and confusion growing in those who live seeking to please men rather than God. As the Scriptures and history resoundingly testify, people are profoundly unstable and fickle. The same crowd who cried, "*Hosanna! Blessed is He who comes in the name of the Lord*" (see **Matthew 27:19**), were just five days later crying, "*Crucify Him!*" (see **Matthew 27:22**). Those who live trying to please people will at best be perpetually confused....

### **Devotion to the King**

The Kingdom of heaven is right now invading the earth. As was explained in **Daniel 2:35**

*... And the stone that struck the image became a great mountain and filled the whole earth.* There is a Kingdom in the midst of the kingdoms of this earth that will grow from a stone until it is a mountain or a government, and it will keep growing until it covers the whole earth. This Kingdom is composed of those whose lives are devoted to following the King. You can expect such to arise in every congregation. They will be an increasing challenge to all who compromise, who try to live lives of political and social correctness just as the King Himself was, and the messenger who prepared His way the first time He came.

We tend to think of governments just in their political form, but spiritual governments are realms of power and influence. These include entities such as media, industries, economic institutions, educational institutions, etc. A Stone is coming to strike the systems of this world, and those who do not bow the knee to the King will be like chaff before the wind. It is now being determined who will be a part of the Stone, and who will be part of the chaff...

Excerpt from article- *A Kingdom Perspective* by Rick Joyner (7 pages)

As we approach the changing of the ages, there are certain signs we should look for as the transition begins. Three of the most basic are: 1) the Bride of Christ making herself ready, 2) the gospel of the Kingdom being preached in all the world (see **Matthew 24:14**), and 3) the reaping of the greatest harvest the world has ever known (see **Matthew 13:39**). These are three of the most basic signs of the end of this age, but they are more than that—they are causes. When the bride makes herself ready (see **Revelation 19:7**), she will become the light of the world that she is called to be, preaching the gospel of the Kingdom, which results in the greatest harvest of all.

We all know by prophecy of Scripture that this age will end in the greatest time of trouble the world has ever known. The harvest is the reaping of everything that has been sown in man, both the good and the evil coming to full maturity at the same time, causing the ultimate clash between them. The ultimate evil that will come to full maturity is of course the basic rebellion against God. This is also the cause of the greatest time of trouble.

By the end of this age, mankind will have made it very clear that without God we will make a terrible mess of things, something no one will ever want to do again. The troubles are basically the result of almost every problem growing beyond human remedy.

Likewise, the glory revealed at the end through His people is the result of obedience to Him. At the very time when lawlessness is increasing and coming to full maturity, many will be walking closer to Him, obeying Him more fully in all things, than the world has ever see at one time. The counter of the Kingdom to this ultimate rebellion of lawlessness will be a church which comes into ultimate submission to the King.

As the time of great trouble is the result of man trying to run this world without God, the church will be finding in Him the answer to every human problem, the glory of living in harmony and union with Him. The result in the great harvest of good and evil is stated in:

**Isaiah 60:1-5**—*Arise, shine; for your light has come, and the glory of the Lord is risen upon you. For behold, the darkness will cover the earth, and deep darkness the peoples; but the Lord will rise upon you, and His glory will appear upon you.*

*And nations will come to your light, and kings to the brightness of your rising. Lift up your eyes round about and see; they all gather together, they come to you. Your sons will come from afar, and your daughters will be carried in arms. Then you will see and be radiant, and your heart will thrill and rejoice; because the abundance of the sea will be turned to you, the wealth of the nations will come to you.*

We see here that when darkness is covering the earth, the glory of the Lord is appearing upon His people. The darkness will make the light appear even brighter, the result of which is the nations turning to the Lord's people.

That the nations will come, bringing their abundance and wealth with them as an ultimate offering to the Lord, is also important to understand...

Santos here: Please consider prayerfully- securing for yourselves the entire set of ***The MorningStar Journal Vol. 16: 1-4- on The Kingdom*** Contact the ministry through their expansive website at [www.morningstarministries.org](http://www.morningstarministries.org)

### **The Day of the Saints... The Next Move of God!**

The contemporary Christian church worldwide in the past twenty five years has experienced a virtual explosion in what many are calling **Present Truth teachings**. I have been blessed beyond measure by many wonderful ministries. Out of the vast array of very diverse ministries in English and Spanish speaking organizations that I am aware of, I personally believe that Christian International Ministries Network under the leadership of founder **Bishop Dr. Bill Hamon** has had the most enduring transformational impact on my life.

Dr. Hamon runs a Bible College, has a ministry network of over 700 churches that he oversees, has formed the ever-expanding **Christian International Business Network**, and is a best selling author with many titles that strengthen the Body of Christ in preparation of the Bride. I have read and highly recommend ***"The Eternal Church"***, ***"Prophets and Personal Prophecy"***, ***"Prophets and the Prophetic Movement"***, ***"Prophets, Pitfalls and Principles"***, ***"Apostles, Prophets and the Coming Moves of God"***, and my favorite- ***"The Day of the Saints"***.



Since my name **Santos-** is the Spanish word for **Saints**, it also holds special prophetic significance in my life.

I have comprehensively studied this book many times since it was published in the fall of 2002. I call it my rainbow book since it is highlighted in yellow, orange, red, blue, and green markers; with many notes written in the margins. **I firmly believe that this book should be required reading for every man and woman of God who is called to be an ambassador of the Kingdom of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ.**

Not only will it correct and resolve many misconceptions that plague the Body of Christ concerning **last things**, but it will activate the people of God in our Lord's intended plans and purposes- hastening His return. I intend to teach out of this book since the **432 pages** are dense with particular subjects that lend themselves to deeper and wider expansion. I therefore submit to you excerpts and highlights from this life-changing book and ministry that need a much wider audience and following. I thank **CIMN** for permission to cite these quotations.

#### Highlights of Special Points section-

- The Day of the Saints is the next scheduled endtime event.
- To participants the supernatural will become the norm during the Day of the Saints.
- Every Saint will become a minister in the Day of the Saints.
- Every fivefold minister will become a full expression of Christ Jesus.
- The Day of the Saints will prepare the way for the Kingdom Establishing Movement.
- It will reveal and activate prophets and apostles in the marketplace.
- Ministers in the marketplace will become as revolutionary an idea to the 21st century Church as gentiles becoming Saints was to the first century Church.
- Saints activated in the marketplace will demonstrate the gospel of the Kingdom of God.
- Saints will demonstrate the Lordship of Christ as a Kingdom witness to every nation.

- The Day of the Saints will bring the revelation and activation of every Saint into supernatural manifestations.
- Its finalization will cause the glory of the Lord to fill the earth as waters cover the seas.
- The greatest harvest of souls ever recorded in Church history will occur during the Day of the Saints.
- Jesus is excited about this coming Day when He will be fully glorified in His Saints.

... Many Christians are looking for “the Day of the Lord”– the return of Jesus Christ. In recent decades, great emphasis has been placed on the “rapture” of Christians out of this world. However, Scripture indicates that many things will happen before the return of the Lord. The Saints will reap the greatest harvest of souls ever to come into the Kingdom. We will seek to scripturally prove the reality of that “Day” on God’s timetable and prophetic agenda– before the coming of the Lord– when the Saints will fulfill all the Scriptures regarding Christ’s Church....

... After we describe where the Saints are headed, we will give practical wisdom that relates to every believer. Prophetic clarity and biblical directives will be given for proper preparation and participation in the Day of the Saints. We will seek to explain the ministry the Saints will manifest, the equipping that fivefold ministers are to provide for the Saints, and the maturity that will be required of the Saints. We hope to reveal the principles that need to be practiced and the pitfalls that need to be avoided in order for the Day of Saints to properly accomplish its purpose. Later chapters will cover how Saints are to operate as ministers in their places of employment in the marketplace and in the areas of government. We look at how to be equipped to hear from God prophetically and how to become activated in supernatural giftings and abilities...

...A “Day of the Saints” is coming in which God is calling every believer to participate. This will be the greatest time in History for those who hunger to fulfill God’s will for their lives, especially those who are 100 percent committed to glorify Christ, overcome all things, reap the Great Harvest, and see God’s Kingdom come and His will be done on Earth as it is in Heaven...

...The Saints of God are those who have been given the privileged opportunity to be conformed to the image of Jesus Christ. This means not only the conforming of our inward character, attitudes, and desires, but also becoming like Jesus in all our behavior and interactions with those around us. It includes being empowered by the Holy Spirit to operate in power and miracles to bring God’s Kingdom to this earth. We are quickly coming to the point in history where average Saints will demonstrate the supernatural works of Jesus Christ. Just as Jesus spoke only what He heard His Father speaking and did only what He saw His Father doing, the

Saints of God are being trained and equipped to manifest the words and deeds of Jesus as they go about their daily business...

... The Day of the Saints will not do away with the government and leadership structure of the Church, but it will cause a paradigm shift in the way Church leaders view the Saints. Instead of being preoccupied with our leadership titles, positions, and authority, we will become more Saints-oriented...

...**The first decade of the twenty-first century** will see the Holy Ghost bringing revelation and proper alignment of the fivefold ministers according to Christ's original pattern so that Christ may fulfill His purpose in and through His Church. I believe God's major purpose for the recognition, activation, and unity of the fivefold ministers is for them to fulfill their divine commission of equipping the Saints. Then the Saints may fulfill their membership ministries and be prepared to participate in the Day of the Saints. Please keep in mind that Church structure and divine order are as eternal as Christ and His Church. The Church will always have different levels of God's delegated authority throughout eternity. The Day of the Saints will not lessen the leadership authority and importance of the local church, but will bring divine application that will make it more effective because it will be functioning according to God's full divine pattern...

... Before Jesus' return, His Church will operate in all the fullness that the Scriptures declare. Jesus Christ declared to His followers, ***"He who believes in Me, the works that I do he will do also; and greater works than these he will do, because I go to My Father"*** John 14:12b. For many years I have prophesied that in the near future, the average Saint will do greater works than the greatest minister today. That time is very near...

### ...**The Next Thing on God's Agenda– the Saints Movement:**

The prophets were restored in the 1980's and the apostles in the 1990's. Now, in this first decade of the twenty-first century Church, it is God's predestined time for the Saints to fully come into their membership ministries. When the fivefold ministers have completed their divine commission of equipping and perfecting the Saints in Christlike character and ministry, then the full manifestation of the Saints can take place. In keeping with other restoration terminology, I have called this Holy Spirit-inspired time of activating God's people the "Saints Movement". It is destined to be a major restoration movement, not just a time of revival

and refreshing. It will have the seven major attributes that have been part of every major restoration movement. Church history reveals that there have been five major restoration movements thus far. The Saints movement will be the sixth...

... Mentors are photographs of our futures. The teaching we receive and the anointing we respect become the beliefs we establish and the type of ministry we exhibit. The fivefold minister who attracts and enthuses us the most becomes the model for our lives. Normally we will become a reproduction of that person. We can neither choose our biological parents nor decide what set of parents will raise us to adults. Sinners normally do not choose which minister will bring them to a saving knowledge of Jesus Christ. However, Christians can choose which church and minister they want to mentor them, especially if the church where they were "birthed" is not growing them beyond their babyhood Christianity.

**As a general rule, a minister will not advance beyond the restoration truth, doctrines, bylaws, and tenets of faith of his denomination.** And a congregation will not advance beyond its pastor's degree of restoration truth and Christian maturity. The exception to the rule is when the minister or church member receives advanced teaching and spiritual experiences outside his local church or denomination...

... Even many Charismatics have not advanced into the Prophetic/Apostolic Movement truths and spiritual experiences. No doubt many who are now involved in the Prophetic and Apostolic will not move on to be leaders and participants in the Saints Movement. **As for me and my house**, I do not want to stop anywhere short of the fullness of restored truth. With the mentors I have had and the exposure to teachings on restoration and revelation concerning God's overall purpose for His Church, I should always be a follower and promoter of restoration truth...

... **The Restoration Viewpoint– "Growing Up":** Reformation-restoration theologians teach that the whole New Testament is the blueprint for the building of the Church. Every truth, ministry, and supernatural manifestation found within the Bible is for the Church to receive, believe, and manifest today... Restoration theologians believe that the greatest apostasy of Christ's Church has already taken place [during the Dark Ages]. Although the world's cup of iniquity will continue to increase and false voices will go out seeking to deceive even the elect, the progressive Church as a whole will overcome and grow more and more glorious...

... Evangelicals and Pentecostals have been declaring for hundreds of years that the next thing on God's agenda is the second coming of Christ. As when Noah proclaimed for 100 years that a flood was coming, one of these days the declarations will be right. He will come! Christ's prophesied second coming will soon be history just as the prophesied flood is now history. However, if Noah had preached about the flood, but had not at the time prepared the ark so he and his family could be the transition generation, they would not have been prepared to make the transition from the old world to the new. Today a transition generation of people are preparing their ark of conformity to the image of Christ so that they can make the transition from the old Earth to the new Earth. We cannot hasten His coming by just longing for it, but we can hurry it along by co-laboring with the Holy Spirit in restoring all things...

... God's purpose for the human race was to have a special group of redeemed people to be in relationship with Him and to show forth His glory on the Earth. These special people make up His Church. It was God's purpose for the Church to be the Bride of Christ, thus making the Saints who are part of the Church/Bride heirs of God and joint- heirs with Christ Jesus. This means that the Church is one with Christ and participates with Him in all that He shall ever do or be both now and throughout eternity. Does God have a purpose for the Church? Yes, just as much as He had and has a purpose for Christ Jesus. God has purposed for the Church to be the full expression of Christ Jesus as Jesus is the full expression of His heavenly Father...

... **The Omega Generation:** Present-day fivefold ministers and Saints must accept the reality that there are things the last generation of the mortal Church must fulfill and accomplish before Christ can return. In order for the "Omega Generation" Saints to fulfill God's purpose, they must come to the fullness of all the way, truth, and life of Christ. The Saints must come to the unity of the faith until they become one, even as Jesus and His Father are one. Jesus declared that the world would not believe and be won until the Saints are united with one another in Him. The greatest harvest ever recorded in Church history will happen when this unity takes place. Apostle Paul declared by divine revelation that all fivefold ministers must continue ministering to the Saints until every member of the Body of Christ is fully functioning in their membership ministry...

**...THE SAINTS WILL FULFILL MORE SCRIPTURE IN THE LAST GENERATION OF THE MORTAL CHURCH THAN HAS BEEN FULFILLED DURING THE LAST 20 CENTURIES!**

**Prophecies About the Church Must Be Fulfilled:** Just as Jesus could not ascend to the Father until He had fulfilled all prophecies concerning His first coming, the same is true concerning the second coming of Christ Jesus. Many things that the prophets and apostles have spoken and written in Scripture must be fulfilled before Christ can return. These things are being revealed by His holy apostles and prophets and restored in the Church through His “times of restoration”. When the Church Empire is completed to the fullness that Christ predestined it to be, then: **Daniel 2:44b...** *the God of heaven will set up a kingdom which shall never be destroyed; and the kingdom shall not be left to other people; it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand forever...*

**...Three areas will Dovetail Together in Prophetic Fulfillment:** Three areas must come to prophetic fulfillment before the fullness of time will be accomplished. The nations of the world, Israel, and the Church must each come to the place of full quantity, quality, accomplishments, and fulfillment of certain predestinated purposes. The world’s cup of iniquity must reach its fullness, even as the sin of the Amorites had to become full before Abraham’s descendants could possess Canaan. God’s promises that He swore to Abraham with an oath concerning natural Israel and the land of Palestine must also be fulfilled. And finally, all prophecies concerning the Church must come to past. God has sovereignly planned for these three areas to come to fulfillment simultaneously. However, the key to the other two is the church. How the Church respond to God determines the status of natural Israel and the gentile nations.

### **The Supernatural Nature of the Church**

The Church was not birthed in doctrine or church creed. It was birthed by the supernatural and into the supernatural power of God... It is good to know that spiritual manifestations of the supernatural power of God are not dependent upon a person’s maturity, doctrinal correctness, or holy character. The only prerequisites for demonstrating the Holy Spirit power that Jesus gave to born-again, Spirit-filled Saints were belief and yieldedness. Then the supernatural gifts would operate...

... The blueprint and pattern recorded in Acts portrays the Church as a supernatural people operating in supernatural principles.

Everything found in the Book of Acts– the truths, principles, gifts, and fruit of the Spirit; the miracles and ministries of the apostle, prophet,

evangelist, pastor, and teacher— were intended not only for the first generation Church but for the whole Church Age...

**...The Stumbling Block of Rationalism:** What God began in a supernatural way is not to be reduced to natural means of operation...

**... In nations where Saints are flowing in the supernatural, harvest is already taking place.** This will be greatly expanded in the Saints Movement. The Church in the West has the challenge of rejecting and renouncing an ungodly dependence upon rationalism and entering into the experiential reality of the Church as described in the New Testament...

**... I believe that during the Saints Movement more souls will be saved than have been saved in all the other restoration movements combined...** [*Emphasis mine-sg*]

... The next progressive step toward all of this taking place is the Saints Movement. Fivefold ministers must intensify their ministry of teaching, training, activating, and maturing the Saints in their membership ministries and weapons of war. The Holy Spirit has been given a schedule and time frame in which to complete the equipping of the Saints. He will work with those who work with Him, and He will leave to themselves those who will not. The pastors must transform their nursing home and retirement center churches into armories and military training camps. It is time to fulfill Joel's prophetic charge (**Joel 2:1; 3:9-10**)...

**...A Gigantic Final Tidal Wave of Restoration Is Coming:** Five major waves of restoration have taken place during the last 500 years, with smaller waves of restoration and renewal between each of those. Several of these smaller waves of restoration and spiritual renewal of various truths and ministries have taken place from 1948 to 1998. And now in this twenty-first century of the Church, several more are on God's refreshing and restoration schedule. The prophets and apostles are seeing on the horizon of God's purpose for His Church a restorational wave of such incomprehensibly gigantic proportions— like a thousand-foot tidal wave— that it staggers the imagination and faith of both those who have prophetically seen it and those who have heard of it. The Day of the Saints will activate the great swelling of the wave and the two movements following it will be greater than all previous restoration movements combined.

Jesus grew in maturity for 30 years- in favor with God the Father and man, then He spent the next three years demonstrating and preaching

the gospel of the Kingdom of God full-time. The Church has spent nearly 2,000 years growing in maturity and being restored. There is shortly coming a period of time where we actively demonstrate the Kingdom of God to the world.

**The Final Restoration Movements:** The present revelation and hopeful expectation is that the seventh and final major restoration movement will take place before the year **2030**. No one but God knows what it will be called, but prophetic revelation makes us know what it shall be and do. It will activate Saints into the mighty conquering army of the Lord to establish God's Kingdom throughout the Earth until the kingdoms of this world have become the kingdoms of our Lord and His anointed Saints (the Church). I will call that future time of restoration the Army of the Lord/Kingdom Establishing Movement. However, that is in the future beyond the Saints Movement...

**Santos:** That ends the citations of brief portions of text from this cutting edge book. Over 400 pages of in depth teaching is well worth the monetary investment. It is available through Christian stores, directly from the ministry ([www.christianinternational.org](http://www.christianinternational.org)), and can even be purchased via Amazon.com.

**Please note: *I do not, nor will I ever receive any compensation, payment, or gift from any of the ministries cited. I have a salaried profession as a counselor, and an entrepreneurial spirit that I have every assurance from the Holy Spirit will bear much fruit... primarily assets for the expansion of Christ's Kingdom. My goal is to lay up substantial treasure in Heaven... and between you and me– it's all about souls.***

These excerpts are but a token of the very many prophetic voices in the world today that are speaking with anointed clarity. The cry of their hearts is for the edification of the Body of Christ in the awe-inspiring goal of the full preparation of the Bride for her magnificent Bridegroom. I highly recommend the **Elijah List** ([www.elijahlist.com](http://www.elijahlist.com)) where they have assumed the monumental task of archiving not only an encyclopedic



*Chapter 17- ...For Such a Time as This...*

listing of these prophetic words, but also have in-depth interviews streaming on their **propheticTV** link... some of the best ever recorded anywhere! They also have many other outstanding resources to build up the Body of Christ... Steve Schultz and his staff have done all of it **unto the Lord** and it shows.

I want to end this chapter and the entire book with a personal blessing that I received some time ago, while meditating on the Lord... on His beauty, His grace, and His sublime love for me. I am overwhelmed even now thinking about how deep is the love of our future Husband, for all who truly are and will be transformed into His Bride- the Glorious Church in the Light of His Holy Radiance!

### **The Lighthouse Vision**

In 1993-94 I began to be drawn inexorably to images of lighthouses. Whenever I saw one in the present, I would have a flashback to the past even childhood- when I had seen one either in a movie, a book, or periodical. I inquired of the Lord as to what He was unveiling and I had a vision. Please note that I was fully awake (not in a trance or out of control), but rather even with my eyes open I was viewing in the theater of my mind, a vision of a lighthouse.

There was a fierce storm raging on the darkest night with heavy rains, thunder claps booming, and lightning flashing both near and far. The howling wind and rising waves made for quite an ominous image. As I looked intently at all this- while in my physical reality it was a beautiful day- yet I did not draw my spiritual eyes away from the vivid cataclysmic scene.

Suddenly in the distance I saw a clipper ship crest over the top of a massive wave. Although it was quite far I could see it in great detail. Its sails were torn and tattered, its lifeboats were gone, and there was a lone navigator tied to the helm with thick rope. He had a troubled yet determined expression- He must get to his destination without losing all.

The ship moved from right to left in my field of vision, it seemed he barely kept from getting capsized, and showed some skill with what little control he had. Even though it was bleak darkness I could see so clearly what was playing out before me.

Suddenly I noticed a flash in the distance to the far left. And again... and then again- like a pulse that would diminish and then brighten, only to diminish again. I could see two things happening simultaneously: the ship was altering its course in spite of the battering waves, and somehow I was getting closer in my visual field to what turned out to be a lighthouse on a craggy cliff.

I could see that the direction that the ship had been going now revealed shallow waters with jagged rocks, and the splintered remains of fixed debris of ships that had ended their existence in the ocean graveyard. He knew that the lighthouse was warning him of the danger, and by its fixed position giving him guidance... "Bear to the starboard- quickly avoid

destruction; swing wide and live; and access my safe harbor a few miles further west."

The moment the navigator miraculously retained control of his ship, and his eyes recognized the coastline through the flashing lightning– the winds began to decrease in intensity, and patches of night sky could be seen as the swiftly moving clouds began to separate. Suddenly a full moon broke through the clouds, shining on the foaming waves. My vision swung me to the opposite side of the ship so that I could see what he saw– a fair haven a short distance away; harbor lights of a small community with welcoming smoke rising from scattered chimneys. As the rain slowly diminished– the ship reached the appointed place of safety...

And then the scene changed dramatically: I was street level in the small seaside community on a bright sunny gorgeous day. There was the busyness of life all around, but again I was drawn for a purpose– to view the edge of the harbor. There I saw the young captain with cargo being taken off the heavily damaged ship. In a compressed time frame I saw him settle accounts for what he brought in, negotiate the replacement of the sails, as well as the major repairs that the ship would require to ever be seaworthy again.

He carefully interviewed many to build a crew of a few dedicated shipmates– and though young, he had discernment and was a keen judge of character. In a short time the ship was ready: repaired and stocked with needed supplies to last on a long voyage. She was manned with a crew that would not break rank- but rather would work as one, with one mind and one heart in the quest for adventure and fulfillment. The new billowing sails were "breathing" in the wind, with gusts making the ship seemingly eager to return to the open sea.

I then saw the young captain working intently with maps, measuring instruments, and a compass... charting a course with multiple ports of call laid out in a sensible timeline. His ship was well-stocked with the marketable items of this rustic community. His loyal crew was given specific directions and assignments, and he- my young captain was rested, healed from the battering wounds he had endured. He was ready to set sail charting a new course with no regrets for the expensive but valuable lessons learned. As I looked at the swinging sails full of the wind, and saw the beautiful ship now turn toward the open sea, I glanced to see her name boldly carved in the side of the ship... **her name is "Destiny"**.

May the Sovereign God of the Universe- **Jehovah Abba Father** draw you by **His Holy Spirit** to love, honor, and obey **the Lord Jesus Christ** in all things. And may He call, commission, and empower you to fulfill a calling and destiny that is far greater than anything that you can conceive of up to this moment- **In His Holy Name, Amen and Amen.**

*1 Corinthians 2:6,7,9... We speak wisdom among those who are mature, yet not the wisdom of this age, nor of the rulers of this age, who are coming to nothing. But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, the hidden wisdom which God ordained before the ages for our glory ...*

*v9... as it is written: "Eye has not seen, nor ear heard, Nor have entered into the heart of man- The things which God has prepared for those who love Him."*

*Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!*

### **Web Resources Directory**

**Benny Hinn Ministries-** [www.bennyhinn.org](http://www.bennyhinn.org)

Miracle healing, anointed ministry, and outstanding biblical teaching.

**Bible Code Digest-** [www.biblecodedigest.com](http://www.biblecodedigest.com)

Equidistant letter sequencing (ESL) of Hebrew in the **Torah** proves divine authorship.

**Charles Carrin-** [www.charlescarrinministries.com](http://www.charlescarrinministries.com)

50 years of anointed ministry to the greater Body of Christ.

**Christian International-** [www.christianinternational.org](http://www.christianinternational.org)

The profound ministry of Dr. Bill Hamon

**Dr. C. Peter Wagner-** [www.globalharvest.org](http://www.globalharvest.org)

The Apostolic Reformation has begun!

**Dr. Lance Wallnau-** [www.lancelearning.com](http://www.lancelearning.com)

Marketplace Apostolic/Prophetic ministry personified...

**Dr. Mark Chironna-** [www.markchironna.com](http://www.markchironna.com)

A remarkable man of God who walks with the Father's heart

**Eagles View Ministries-** [www.bobbyconner.org](http://www.bobbyconner.org)

Bobby Conner's progressive ministry

**The Elijah List-** [www.elijahlist.com](http://www.elijahlist.com)

The Apostolic/Prophetic anointing represented by many contributors

**Expression 58-** [www.expression58.org](http://www.expression58.org)

Bringing a creative revolution and renaissance through the Isaiah 58 mandate

**Extreme Prophetic-** [www.extremeprophetic.com](http://www.extremeprophetic.com)

The electrifying ministry of Patricia King and her team

**Fresh Fire Ministries-** [www.freshfire.ca](http://www.freshfire.ca)

Todd Bentley's dynamic ministry

**From the Hidden-** [www.fromthehidden.com](http://www.fromthehidden.com)

Anne Theresa Garcia's line-upon-line outstanding Bible teaching ministry

**Gatekeepers-** [www.gatekeepers.org.uk](http://www.gatekeepers.org.uk)

The empowering ministry of Lady Catherine Brown of Scotland

**George Barna-** [www.barna.org](http://www.barna.org)

Research ministry- knows where the church has been- and where we're going

**Global Awakening-** [www.globalawakening.com](http://www.globalawakening.com)

The supernatural Apostolic ministry of Randy Clark

**Glory of Zion-** [www.gloryofzion.org](http://www.gloryofzion.org)

Dr. Chuck Pierce's incredibly accurate Prophetic ministry

**God TV-** [www.god.tv](http://www.god.tv)

Rory and Wendy Alec's international broadcast ministry for the endtime Harvest

**Graham Cooke-** [www.grahamcooke.com](http://www.grahamcooke.com)

Future Training Institute empowering us for Kingdom living... now!

**Grant Jeffrey-** [www.grantjeffrey.com](http://www.grantjeffrey.com)

In depth scholarship of a prolific writer/teacher

**Heal Our Land Ministries-** [www.hushmoney.org](http://www.hushmoney.org)

The unique ministry of Peter Kershaw

**Herald of His Coming-** [www.heraldofhiscoming.org](http://www.heraldofhiscoming.org)

Powerfully anointed articles of our precious faith glorifying the Trinity

**House of David-** [www.houseofdavid.com](http://www.houseofdavid.com)

Curt Landry's excellent ministry emphasizing the *One New Man* joining...

**Intercessors for America-** [www.ifapray.org](http://www.ifapray.org)

Many anointed prayer ministries under one umbrella- pulling down strongholds

**Jack MacArthur-** [www.voiceofcalvaryradio.com](http://www.voiceofcalvaryradio.com)

*Voice of Calvary's* outstanding Bible teacher... a truly profound legacy

**Jordan Rubin-** [www.biblicalhealthinstitute.com](http://www.biblicalhealthinstitute.com)

Health according to the Scriptures and modern nutritional science

**Kevin Conner-** [www.kevinconner.org](http://www.kevinconner.org)

Preeminent Old Testament scholar with many great books for in-depth study

**Key to Revival-** [www.keytorevival.org](http://www.keytorevival.org)

*How to Know God Personally* tract

**Koinonia House-** [www.khouse.org](http://www.khouse.org)

The contemporary teaching ministry of Dr. Chuck and Nancy Missler

**Last Days Ministries-** [www.lastdaysministries.org](http://www.lastdaysministries.org)

Keith and Melody Green's cutting edge ministry

**Living Stream ministry-** [www.lsm.org](http://www.lsm.org)

The historic ministry of Watchman Nee and Witness Lee

**Lou Engle-** [www.louengle.com](http://www.louengle.com)

The heart of a true watcher and intercessor with the Father's burden for the innocent

**Master Potter-** [www.masterpotter.com](http://www.masterpotter.com)

Jill Austin's heart of El Shaddai

**MorningStar Ministries-** [www.morningstarministries.org](http://www.morningstarministries.org)

Resources in abundance for the Advancing Church!

**Open Heaven-** [www.openheaven.com](http://www.openheaven.com)

Present truth teaching about the Kingdom of Heaven touching earth

**Prophet Kim Clement-** [www.kimclement.com](http://www.kimclement.com)

Highly unusual and Spirit-gifted Apostolic/Prophetic ministry

**Selah Ministries-** [www.selahministries.com](http://www.selahministries.com)

The Worship and teaching ministry of Ray Hughes

**Shoreshim Ministries-** [www.billcloud.org](http://www.billcloud.org)

Our Hebraic roots in Christianity

**Sid Roth's Messianic Vision-** [www.sidroth.org](http://www.sidroth.org)

*One New Man*- Great guests and resources

*Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!*

**Streams Ministries International-** [www.streamsministries.com](http://www.streamsministries.com)

The website of Prophet John Paul Jackson

**Terry Teykl-** [www.prayerpointpress.com](http://www.prayerpointpress.com)

Resources to build the church in prayer

**The Call-** [www.thecall.com](http://www.thecall.com)

Fasting and prayer for the Great Awakening and to abolish abortion/murder

**The Unknown Prophet-** [www.unknownprophet.com](http://www.unknownprophet.com)

All I can say is WOW!

**The Way of the Master-** [www.wayofthemaster.com](http://www.wayofthemaster.com)

Ray Comfort and Kirk Cameron's unparalleled training ministry

**Voice of Evangelism-** [www.voe.org](http://www.voe.org)

Perry Stone's present truth teaching ministry and outstanding resources

**Walid Shoebat-** [www.shoebat.com](http://www.shoebat.com)

Former PLO Terrorist comes to Christ, and is given divine insight re. the Last Days. His book *God's War on Terror* is truly remarkably unique!

**Wallbuilders-** [www.wallbuilders.com](http://www.wallbuilders.com)

America's Christian roots as revealed by David Barton... amazing scholarship

**Watch of the Lord-** [www.maheshchavda.com](http://www.maheshchavda.com)

The ministry of Mahesh and Bonnie Chavda- unique understanding of prayer

**White dove Ministries-** [www.whitedoveministries.org](http://www.whitedoveministries.org)

The Prophetic ministry of Paul Keith Davis and Bob Jones

**Wild at Heart-** [www.ransomedheart.com](http://www.ransomedheart.com)

A ministry saturation needed in every man of God's life- one of the very best!

**Worship Institute-** [www.worshipinstitute.com](http://www.worshipinstitute.com)

Training for rebuilding the Tabernacle of David

**Zion's Hope-** [www.zionshope.org](http://www.zionshope.org)

Our Hebraic roots in Christianity- with *Zion's Fire* magazine treasures





*Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!*

**Recommended Reading (A brief list)**

**2 Timothy 2:15 (KJV)... *Study to show thyself approve unto God, a worker that need not be ashamed, rightly dividing the Word of Truth.***

***Holiness and Prayer***

Changed Into His Likeness- Watchman Nee  
 The Lost Art of Intercession- James W. Goll  
 Kneeling On the Promises- James W. Goll  
 God's Chosen Fast- Arthur Wallis  
 In The Day of Thy Power- Arthur Wallis  
 The Art of War- Sun Tzu  
 Warfare Prayer- C. Peter Wagner  
 The Life-Giving Church- Ted Haggard  
 Wild at Heart- John Eldredge  
 Sacred Romance- John Eldredge  
 Waking the Dead- John Eldredge  
 The Way of the Wild Heart- John Eldredge  
 The Three Battlegrounds- Francis Frangipane  
 Holiness, Truth, & the Presence of God- Francis Frangipane  
 Living In the Combat Zone- Rick Renner  
 With Christ in the School of Prayer- Andrew Murray  
 America: To Pray or Not To Pray?- David Barton  
 Worship: The Ultimate Priority- John MacArthur  
 Overcoming the Adversary- Mark Bubeck  
 The Christian in Complete Armour (3 Vols.)- William Gurnall  
 Shaping History through Prayer & Fasting- Derek Prince  
 Prayer and Fasting- Kingsley Fletcher  
 Welcoming a Visitation of the Holy Spirit- Wesley Campbell

***Apostolic/Prophetic***

The Eternal Church- Dr. Bill Hamon  
 Prophets and Personal Prophecy- Dr. Bill Hamon  
 Prophets and the Prophetic Movement- Dr. Bill Hamon  
 Prophets: Pitfalls and Practices- Dr. Bill Hamon  
 Apostles, Prophets, & the Coming Moves of God- Dr. Bill Hamon

The Day of the Saints- Dr. Bill Hamon  
 Apostles & the Emerging Apostolic Movement- David Cannistraci  
 Against The Tide- Angus Kinnear  
 The Apostolic Ministry- Rick Joyner  
 The Prophetic Ministry- Rick Joyner  
 You May All Prophecy- Steve Thompson  
 The Presence Based Church- Terry Teykl  
 The Next Move of God- Dr. Fuchsia Pickett  
 Growing In the Prophetic- Mike Bickle  
 The God Chasers- Tommy Tenney  
 Keys to Heaven's Economy- Shawn Bolz  
 A Divine Confrontation- Graham Cooke  
 Developing Your Prophetic Gifting- Graham Cooke  
 Destined For the Throne- Dr. Paul Billheimer  
 Revisiting the Kingdom- Dr. Myles Munroe  
 The Kingdom, Power, and Glory- Dr. Chuck & Nancy Missler  
 The Harvest- Rick Joyner  
 The Elijah Task- John & Paula Sanford  
 User Friendly Prophecy- Larry Randolph  
 The Coming Shift- Larry Randolph  
 They Speak With Other Tongues- John Sherrill  
 The Sound of His Voice- Kim Clement  
 Good Morning, Holy Spirit- Benny Hinn  
 The Complete Wineskin- Harold Eberle

### ***Evangelism/Apologetics***

Taking Your City for God- John Dawson  
 Original Intent- David Barton  
 That None Should Perish- Ed Silvano  
 The Blessing- Gary Smalley & Dr. John Trent  
 How to Win Your City To Jesus- Charles & Frances Hunter  
 How to Heal The Sick- Charles & Frances Hunter  
 Signs & Wonders Follow Me- Charles & Frances Hunter  
 Supernatural Horizons- Charles & Frances Hunter  
 His Power through You- Charles & Frances Hunter  
 Laboring In the Harvest- Leroy Eims  
 Putting Your Faith on The Line- Hubert Mitchell  
 The Case for Faith- Lee Strobel  
 The Case for Christ- Lee Strobel  
 Encyclopedia of Biblical Difficulties- Dr. Gleason Archer

*Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!*

### ***Bible Study***

Ye Search the Scriptures- Watchman Nee  
 The Spiritual Man- Watchman Nee  
 Enmity between The Seeds- Bill Cloud  
 Evidence That Demands a Verdict- Josh McDowell  
 A Ready Defense- Josh McDowell  
 The Light & the Glory- Peter Marshall  
 Called and Committed- David Watson  
 Armageddon: Appointment with Destiny- Grant Jeffrey  
 Creation: Remarkable Evidence of God's Design- Grant Jeffrey  
 The Handwriting & Signature of God- Grant Jeffrey  
 The More Excellent Ministry- Kelly Varner  
 John G. Lake: His Complete Writings- Roberts Liardon  
 Maria Woodworth Etter: Her Complete Teachings- Roberts Liardon  
 Smith Wigglesworth: Complete Works- Roberts Liardon  
 There were Two Trees in The Garden- Rick Joyner  
 The Merismos- Randy Shankle  
 Spiritual Authority- Watchman Nee  
 The Making of a Leader- Bobby Clinton  
 Christ the Center- Dietrich Bonhoeffer  
 The Cost of Discipleship- Dietrich Bonhoeffer  
 The Lie: Evolution- Ken Ham  
 The Islamic Invasion- Dr. Robert Morey  
 God's War on Terror- Walid Shoebat  
 The Real Presence- Leann Payne  
 Witness of the Stars- Dr. E.W. Bullinger  
 The Laws of the Spirit- Bob Buess

### ***Last Days***

The House of the Lord- Francis Frangipane  
 The Power of Vision- George Barna  
 Soul Tsunami- Dr. Leonard Sweet  
 Redeeming the Land- Gwen Shaw  
 Holy Fire- Dr. Michael Brown  
 The Fatherless Generation- Kevin Springer  
 The Pre-Wrath Rapture of the Church- Dr. Marvin Rosenthal  
 The Joshua Generation- E. Bernard Jordan  
 Epic Battles of the Last Days- Rick Joyner  
 The Final Quest- Rick Joyner  
 The Call- Rick Joyner  
 The Torch & The Sword- Rick Joyner

For additional copies of this book, you can find it online at your favorite Internet storehouse, or request it via **ISBN # 978-1450518482** at your local bookstores as well.

See my blog at [zionsgate.wordpress.com](http://zionsgate.wordpress.com)- for information concerning the coming sequels in this trilogy:

***Cleansing The Temple***- which seeks to further prepare the sons and daughters of God for the soon coming **Marriage Supper of the Lamb**. There is a return to true Holiness that is required in these Last Days, and this book will add to the discussion of what our Lord is worthy to expect.

***An Excellent Spirit***- This final volume in the set (each of which is to glorify the Father, the Lord Jesus, and the Holy Spirit in sequence) will reveal many examples of men and women of God both in the Bible and in Church History who demonstrated by their dedicated lives what was said of Daniel the Prophet... that he was a man with *an excellent spirit*, empowered by Jehovah Holy Spirit.

May our God and Holy Father bless you as you continue to seek Him, by the power of His Holy Spirit... in the Name of our Lord Jesus Christ- Amen.

***With Joy Unspeakable and Full of Glory-  
In HIM... Santos Garcia, Jr,***

*Thy Kingdom Come- Here and Now!*

